



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

To be returned

29 MAY 1936

JUN

JUN

E. 91:36



300078030L

36
37)

ENGLISH LIBRARY

Temporary Address:
Examination Schools,
High Street, Oxford.

This book should be returned on or before the latest date below:

FEB 17 1962

DEC-7-1963

CANCELLED

30 APR 1969

27 APR 1972

17 MAR 2005

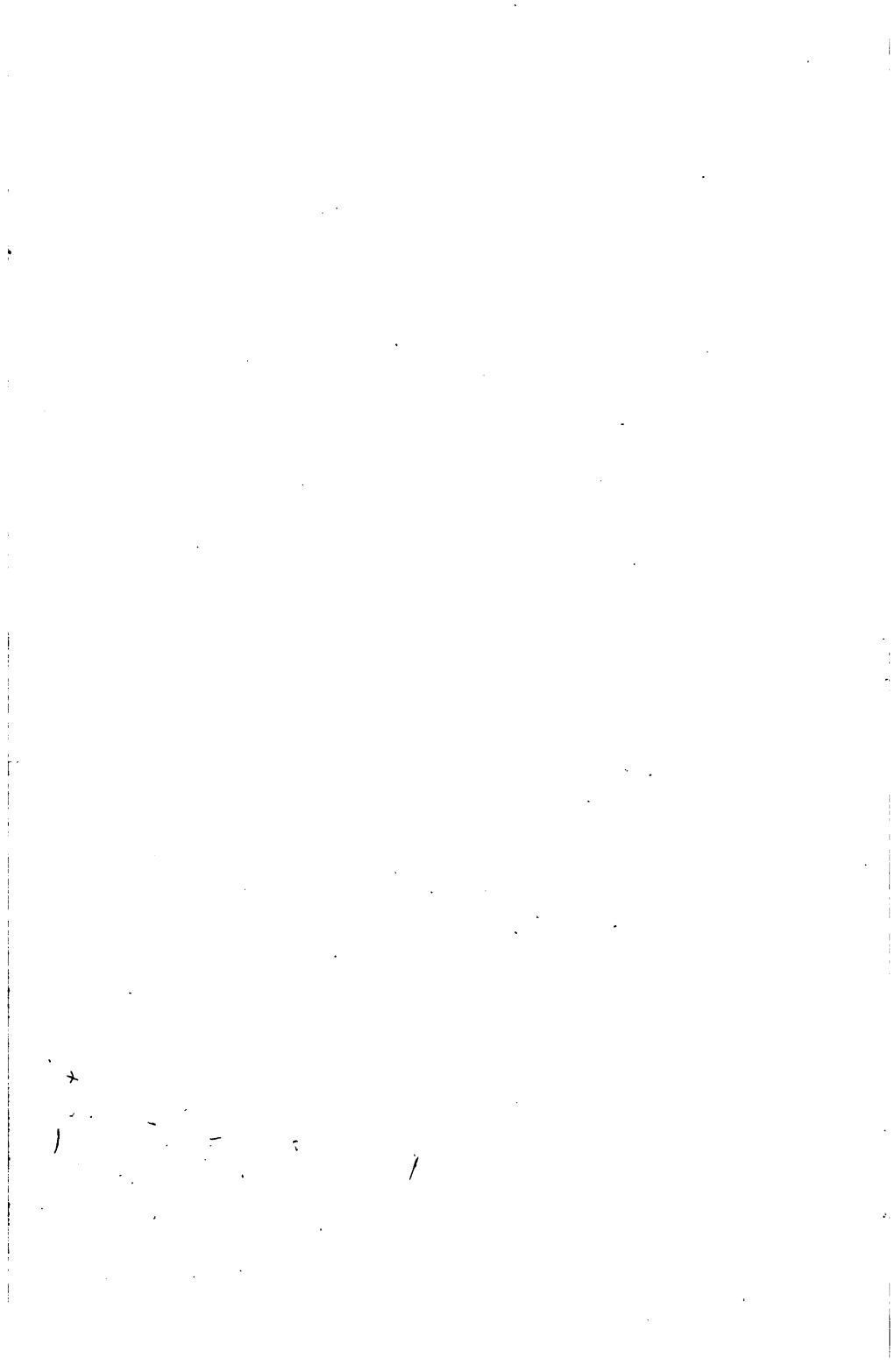
119 OCT 1972

15 DEC 2005

- 8 MAR 1990

CANCELLED
26 MAY 1993

*Readers are asked to protect Library books from rain etc.
Any volumes which are lost, defaced with notes, or other-
wise damaged, may have to be replaced by the Reader
responsible.*



Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, XXXVI.

THE ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III.

The Tale of the Noble and Crysten Prince, Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CANTON,
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.

EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary.

BY

SIDNEY J. H. DERBTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "THE ANTIQUARIARY" AND "THE GLEANER," ETC.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TURNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXX.

Price Sixteen Shillings.

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management :

Director: FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, Esq.

Treasurer: HENRY R. WHEATLEY, Esq.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67 VICTORIA RD., FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Sec. for America: PROF. F. J. CHILD, Harvard Coll. Cambr., Mass., U.S.A.

J. MEADOWS COWPER, Esq.

ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, Esq.

H. HUCKS GIBBS, Esq.

REV. J. RAWSON LUMBY.

REV. PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR.

REV. DR. RICHARD MORRIS.

DR. J. A. H. MURRAY.

EDWARD B. PHAUMOK, Esq.

REV. WALTER W. SKKAT.

HENRY SWERT, Esq.

W. ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq.

FRANZ J. ZUPITZA.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

Bankers: THE UNION BANK OF LONDON, 2, PRINCE STREET, E.C.

The Publications for 1866 (except Nos. 20 and 21) are out of print. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

The Publications for 1864 (21s.) are:—

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1300 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
2. Arthur, ab. 1400, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s.
3. Lauder on the Death of Kynges. &c. 1550, ed. P. Hall, D.C.L. 4s.
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.

The Publications for 1865 (21s.) are:—

5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s.
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1300, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8s.
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.
8. Moris Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. E. B. Cook. 7s.
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. Kingsley and F. J. Furnivall. 10s.
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d.
11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1632, Part I., ed. S. J. Heritage, B.A. [At Press]
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s.

The Publications for 1866 (two guineas), out of print (except 21, 23), are:—

13. Sainte Margherite, 1298-1336, ed. Rev. A. Godefray. 10s.
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, E.D.
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.
16. The Book of Quatre Essence, ab. 1400-50, ed. F. J. Furnivall.
17. Parallel Extracts from 29 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.
18. Hall Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. G. G. Cockayne.
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.
20. Hampole's English Prose Treatise, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s.
22. Farquhar on Languish, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.
23. Ben Meinel's Asynbitt of Inwytt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d.

The Publications for 1867 (one guinea, less 2s. 2d., out of print) are:—

24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1450, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s.
25. The Stations of Rome, the Pilgrims Sea-voyage, with Glasse Maydenhead, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s.
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Phares's MS., ab. 1400, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s.
27. Levens's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a spelling Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s.
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1562 A.D. = 1611 A.D., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
29. Early English Homilies, ab. 1220-30 A.D., Part I., Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s.
30. Piers the Ploughman's Creed, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s.

The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are:—

31. Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s.
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Book of Nurture of John Russell, the Boke of Keruynge, Curmasy, and Democor, the Babees Book, Urnaitatit, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s.
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D., A Book for Daughters, ed. F. Wright, M.A. 8s.
34. Early English Homilies before 1300 A.D., Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s.
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. P. Hall. 7s.

The Publications for 1869 (one guinea) are:—

36. Merlin, Part III., Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glanville. 12s.
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., An Satyre of the Thre Estates. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s.
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II., Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d.
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson and G. A. Panton. Part I. 10s. 6d.

The Publications for 1870 (one guinea) are:—

40. English Glides, their Statutes and Customs, 1249 A.D., Ed. T. Toutman Smith and J. C. T. Smith, with an Essay on Glides and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentnall. 21s.
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 2s.
42. Bernart's De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. E. Lumby, M.A. 2s.
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 8s.

Charles the Great.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxvii.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III.

The Luf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.

EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR PERUMBRAS," ETC.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXXI.

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyne*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring 2½ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of *Fierabras*, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.¹ One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de novembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par maiestre Guillaume le roy. Le cincquiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

¹ Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this *Lyf of Charles the Grete* at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

¹ See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaureur of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaureur of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liurey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^d. ob. [*leaf 49 back*]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl.^s: his Liurey is as Knightes, and if he be sicke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sicke, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eighteene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sicke, he taketh such Liurey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liurey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liuries [*leaf 50*]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth thervpon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodgeing in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office The maister
to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one two seruants,
honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Clerke
the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. one seruant.
And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and A Charriot
all there apparell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and with seauen
groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold
to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans,
by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold,
and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and
brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it
will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Accompt of housold. And as
for othir thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Obla-*
*tionibus*¹ *Regis* capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or
outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by
the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to
weare the Kinges liuerey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys
by record in this office./

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and
Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and
to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet
with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the
Port of London.² The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

¹ Vide de hoc antea: folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

² The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for
the period:—

[*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts, Bundle 692.
J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.
VII., William Dawbeney late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received
as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria
persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum
Anglie transeunt, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis
[i. e. in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus
navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi
poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia
non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in
pecunia numerata, aut massa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt;
vel si alique persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia
Regi vel auditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum,
detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibuciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Ha-
bendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum
medietate forisfacture predictae."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.¹

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Dawbnay*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

ib. p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

¹ Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI, ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500.

said *William Daubeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,¹ 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretended king* . . . and also the summe of c. li. parcell of xxiiij °. li by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said citie of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij °. li. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldremen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of juelx of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere."²

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Daubeney*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemound, a coler of gold of xxth oz., xxxth li.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].³ John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

¹ 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

² *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII.*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

³ Stowe's *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilgear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,
Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

- ¹ **S** Aynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al
thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton
to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the
4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerce. Thenne
sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and
corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles
the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce
8 engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the
werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue
to vs ensaumple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions
digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and
12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hye
hystories the comune vnderstandyng is better content
to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to
which it is submyed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes
16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry
bolomyer, chanonne of lausanne, for to reduce for his
playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce
as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght
20 puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng
of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete
Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland,
Olyuer, and other, touchyng² somme werkes haultayne
24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght
ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul
says, "all scrip-
tures are written
for our learning,"

and the liues of
the auncients give
us an example
how to liue,

I haue, at the per-
suasion of the
venerable Canon
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this
history of
Charlesaigne and
his douzeperes

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

to the best of my
ability, chiefly

from the *Specu-
lum Historiale*.

As I have before
printed the Lives
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of
Boulogne,

I now print this
that all may be
able to read it in
our mother-
tongue.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-
creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue
wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen
of thys mater and the hystories dysioyned wythoute 4
ordre, therefore at his request, after the capacitye of my
lytel entendement, And after thystories and mater that
I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.
And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8
largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For
I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben
enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour
hystorial, as by the canonnes and somme other bookes 12
whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And
by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable founde-
ment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce.
For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16
the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and
after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be
founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche
the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20
grete ate[n]dacyon, by ¹the playsyr of god, to whome I
submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought
to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion
of euery persone. 24

THenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-
prynte the book of the noble & victoryous kyng
Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten
kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englishe the 28
noble hystorie & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of
Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme persones
of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce
thystorie and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce 32
Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce² & emperour of Rome,
the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystories,
actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke
as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

¹ A ij, back.

² *Ed.* fraunce.

- quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe
 here in this noble royaume of england. And for to
 satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good synguler
 4 lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enprysed
 and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to
 our englysshe, as all alonge and playnely ye may rede,
 here, and see in thys book ¹here folowyng, besechyng
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple
 reducyng. and though so be there be no gaye termes,
 ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue specyally
 reduced it after the symple connyng that god hath lente
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng I
 hope truly. And that I may so do & contynue I byseche
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and so to laboure and
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.
- 24 ¶ ²Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this
 book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly
 the mater therin comprised.
- ¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth
 28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v
 chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce and
 of kyng Cloys.
- 32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynims vnto kyng cloys
 the first crysten kyng: capitulo primo
 How kyng cloys beyng a paynym had to wyf
 clotildis doughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-
 lously: capitulo ij

And I ask all my
readers to pardon
any imperfections
in the work,

which I have done
after my simple
learning,

for which I bless
my father and
mother, who sent
me to school.

The contents of
this book.

Of book I.

Pt I contains v
chapters.

Of the first kings
of France.

Of King Cloys.

¹ col. 2.

² A iij.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wile,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ca.	ij
	How kyng Clois was vycctorious on his enemyes by- 4 cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ca.	iiij
and of his baptism.	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo.	v.
Pt II contains v chapters.	¶ The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrst of kyng ⁱ pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone.	12
Of King Pepin.	How Pepyn by hys prudence ¹ was chosen kyng of frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession : capitulo	primo
How Charles was made Emperour of Rome.	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyons 16 wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ca.	ij
Of his figure,	Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng : capitulo	iiij 20
children,	To whome the kyng ⁱ Charles & his chyldren soncs & doughters were dedyed : capitulo	iiij
and pursuits.	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng ⁱ and charytable werkes, and other maters : ca.	v 24
Pt III contains iii chapters.	¶ The thyrde partye of the fyrst book conteyneth iiij chapytres, & telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.	28
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	How the patryarcke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes : capitulo	primo
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to 32 conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca.	ij
and brought home the holy relics.	Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon : [ca.]	iiij

¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth Book II contain-
ing iii parts.
thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared.

¶ The first partye of the second ¹book conteyneth Pt I contains xvj
chapters.
4 xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene
Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt.

¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles
ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynyns, after a lytel of
8 the prologe : ca. primo

Of fyerabras how he came to exerceyte charles : Of Fyerabras
[Ferumbras].
capitulo ij

How Rycharð of Normondye sayd to thempour
12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo iij

The answer of Rolland to thempour ouer sodeynly : Dispute between
ca. iiij

How kyng charles & Rolland ben reprysed by Charles and Ro-
land.
16 thauctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor-
sayd : capitulo v

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras How Oliver,
against the wish
of his father,
undertook to fight
with Fierabras.
notwythstondyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj

20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he
shold not fyzt with the geaunt, but for al that he went
forth : capitulo vij

How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no
24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions. viij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras
to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how
Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix

28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the Of the fight,
prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x

How Olyuer made hys prayer ²to god whan he felte
hym hurte : Capitulo xj

32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & and of the bottles
of holy balm.
dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was
slayn : capitulo xij

How fyerabras & olyuer fouzt togyder on fote mer-

¹ A iij, bk.

² col. 2.

- uaylously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer :
capitulo xiiij
- How Oliver over-
came Fyerabras, How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed
by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes 4
of Fyerabras. [ca.] xiiij
- but was himself
taken by the
Saracens, How Fyerabras beyng^t vaynquysshed^t byleued^t in god,
and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was
assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca. xv 8
- Pt II contains
xvij chapters. How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld^t pye-
tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe
men : capitulo xvij
- ¶ The second^t partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij 12
chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of
fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to
speke to ballant thadmyral.
- ¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16
baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca. j
- How Oliver was
thrown into
prison, How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant
thadmyral and cruelly passyoned^t by pryson : capitulo ij
- Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged^t 20
and how they were vysyted^t by fayr Florypes, ¹doughter
of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo² iij
- How the frensshe men were had^t oute of pryson and
vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24
and after released
by Floripas. chambre : capitulo iiij
- How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij
peres of fraunce, whyche wold^t not gladly haue goon
thyder : capitulo v 28
- Of the messengers
sent by Charles
and Balan, How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles
to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by
the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vj
- Of the Bridge of
Mantrible. Of the meruayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32
tribute that must be there payed^t for the passage, & how
with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed^t ouer. [ca.] vij
- How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and
what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

¹ A iiij.² Ed. tapitulo.

- How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were sauē & lodged to-gyder & knowen by her, & resonned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other
 4 maters: capitulo ix How Floripes saved the French knights.
- How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre & after was slayne by duc naymes in blowyng¹ of the cole: capitulo x Of the death of Lucifer,
- 8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntement a gyrdel was taken¹ fro his doughter: capitulo xj and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,
- 12 How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungrē, & how the goddes were by them confounded: ca. xij which was besieged by Balan.
- How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, & 16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle: capitulo xiiij
- How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral, 20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo xiiij Of the capture of Guy,
- How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyne, seyng¹ the crysten men, whyche socoured 24 hym puyssantly. [ca.] xv and his rescue.
- How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fougt with the paynems xvj
- 28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl down by enchauntement, & how the frensshe men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the paynems: capitulo xvij Of the burning of the tower by Balan.
- 32 Here begynneth the thyrd parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvj chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce² made to them socours, and the paynems confused & destroyed. Pt III contains xvj chapters.

Of the moyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. frauce.

How the French
determined to
send Richard to
Charles for help.

and shewe ¹theyr affayres vnto kyng Charles, & how
rychard of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym:
capitulo primo

Of the death of
Clarion,

How after that Rychard was departed the kyng^t 4
claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the
whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valyauntly, &
other maters: capitulo ij

How the hors of rychard cam & retorned through 8
thexcersyte of thadmyral & was seen & knowen of the
peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had
ben deed, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept:
ca. iij 12

How Richard
passed the river
Flagot,

How rychard of Normandye passed the ryuer of
flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte:
capitulo iiij

How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorned 16
wythoute goyngt ony ferther, by the counceyl of the
traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v

and reached
Charles.

How after the complaynte of Charles rychard of
normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete 20
necessytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they
were in: capitulo vj

How the French
army passed the
bridge of Man-
tribles.

How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Nor-
mandye with iij other barons the stronge brydge of 24
mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what
manere man was galafre: ca. vij

How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred
into man²tryble after that Galafre was deed, not-with- 28
stondyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym,
& many other maters. [ca.] viij

Of Amyot
the giantess,

How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe
dyd gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32
hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral
whan he knewe the tydynges: ca. ix

How the peres of fraunce were assayled more

¹ A liij, bk.

² col. 2.

- strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :
- 4 capitulo x
- How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-
lon bare hym meruaylously whan he was sent forth
8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.] xj
- How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,
12 & other maters : ca. xij
- How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after-
ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the
16 frensshe men : capitulo xiiij
- How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam
oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad-
myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca. xiiij
- 20 ¶ How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that
was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &
24 she quene of that contre : capitulo xv
- How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvj
- 28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth
ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two
32 grete geantes.
- How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by
the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo

Of the fortunes
of the knights
besieged by
Balan,

and how they saw
Charles coming
to their aid.

How Reyner slew
Sortibrant.

Of the capture of
Balan,

and his death,
and of the baptism
and marriage of
Floripas.

Book III contains
ij parts.

Pt I contains xiiij
chapters.

How at the bid-
ding of St James
Charles invaded
Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme
of theym were by hym cursed : capitulo ij

Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght
not be beten down, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4
therof : capitulo iij

and of the church
which he built to
the saint.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other
chyrcches that he dyd there do founde : [ca.] iiij

How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8
spayne & destroyed and put to deth the crysten men
Charles recouerd it, & other maters : capitulo v

How Aigoland
challenged
Charles,

¹How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably
come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12
how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, &
other maters : capitulo vj

How charles accompanied with moche peple retourned
to the place forsaid & took the cite of agenne, & other 16
maters : capitulo vij

Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan
he was retourned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in
his companye, and of theyr puyssaunce : capitulo viij 20

by whom he was
vanquished.

Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the
deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not bap-
tysed : ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple,
& how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24
concupyscence of money, & the crysten founden dede
by myracle : ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant,
how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out
daunger, & how afterward rolland fouzt ayenst hym : 28
ca. xj

Of Ferragus the
giant,

and his duel with
Roland.

How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten
to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by
what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland : ca. xij 32

How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of
that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc-
tyon : ca. xiiij

- How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chircches ¹of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y^e pryncypal 4 chyrches : [ca.] xiiij
- ¶ The second^e partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce. Pt II contains x chapters.
- 8 How the trayson was comprysed by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreued by thauctour : ca. j
- Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland 12 was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and deed : capitulo ij
- How Rolland deyed moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and prayed to god moche deuoutely, 16 and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal : capitulo iij
- Of the vysion of the deth of rolland shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & 20 how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iijj
- How olyuer was founden slayn, and of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo v
- 24 How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankynges and preysynges to god and to Saynt Denys : And of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo vj
- 28 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed holyly, ²and of his deth shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, and of his buryeng Imperyally : ca. vij
- Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and of hys 32 deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo viij
- Thexcusacyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix
- Thenuoye of thauctour : ca. x

¶ Explicit

¹ A v, bk.

² col. 2.

Of the church built by Charles to St James.

Pt II contains x chapters.

Of the treason of Ganellon.

Of the death of Roland,

and how Turpin saw it in a vision.

Of the deaths of Oliver and Ganellon.

Of the death and burial of Charles.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynymys vnto kyng'
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo
primo]

Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francus, a

companion of
Eneas,

and of the kings
of France after
him,

¹ **A**S it is redde in thystories of the troians 4
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of
Troye there was a kyng^t moche noble named^t
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for
the felycyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfy a
cyte whiche he named^t fraunce, & so folowyng^t all the
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhanuced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The
second was marcurius xxxij yere; The ij pharamundus
regned xj yere; The iiij clodyus xiiij yere; The v 16
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng^t whyche
regned^t vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Guldengus,
King of Bur-
gundy, and his
four sons,

IN that tyme was kyng^t of the burgoy nons guy-
dengus, the whiche had^t iiij sones al of good
aege, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij ²godo-
gesylus, the iiij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and^t after

¹ A vj.

² col. 2.

- henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned hyr. This hypericus had two fayre doughters, the eldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncle 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssmyled. The yonger of these ij dougters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng¹ thys the kyng clodoneus, or 8 Cloys in frencyshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyldys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfyed it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde, 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng¹ those dayes the kyng Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named 20 aurelianus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente¹ to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssmyled, & left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplyssed this mayde Clotildis, 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad & wel 32 contente kyssed hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed hyr honde & sent for to seche hym by hyr seruauant. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis,
daughter of
Hypericus,
and of her great
beauty.

Cloys sends
Aurelian in dis-
guise to see
Clotildis.

He presents him-
self before her to
receiue alms.

She sends for him,

¹ A vj, back.

and asks him
who he is,
and his object in
coming.

Aurelian tells her,
and presents the
ring of Cloye.

Clotildis says she
cannot marry a
pagan.

Next year Cloye
demands Clotildis
to wife from Aga-
bondus,

who at first re-
fuses, but after-
wards consents.

Cloye and Clo-
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the ryng of kyng cloye
& humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde
began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymyl-
est thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus 4
answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am
a messenger of the noble kyng' cloye kyng' of Fraunce,
whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng' enformed of
your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8
for to be quene," & forthwith he ¹presented to hir the
ryng of kyng cloye the whyche she took & put it in to
the tresour of agabondus hir vncl, & sayd to the mes-
sager that he shold recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12
tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to
haue to his wyf a crysten woma. Neuertheles she
prayed hym that of al this he shold say noo worde, &
that she wold not doo but as the kyng' wold. & vpon 16
this poynt aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng,
wherevpon the kyng cloye the yere folowyn^g sent ageyn
his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vncl of Clotildis
for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20
thentencyon of kyng cloye he answerd to the messenger:
"Say hardyly to the kyng' thy lord that he hath lytel
to do in desyryng' to haue my nyece to wyf:" but the
bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the puy- 24
saunce of kyng Cloye, by good councyl whan they had
wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng &
founded the ryng of kyng cloye which clotyldis had
layed therin, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28
wente & concluded to performe the wyll of kyng clois:
& vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuerd Clotildis to
aurelianus & he brouzt hir with his peple with grete
Ioye to kyng cloye which had grete ²playsyr to see 32
thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnyte
after the maner royal he espoused hir after the custome
of his lawe.

¹ col. 2.

² A vij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the
 quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'
 byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other
 4 maters: capitulo iij

THe fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre
 that the kyng' and' the quene shold' slepe to-
 gyder, Clotyldis embraced wyth the loue of god
 8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord' went and' said'
 to the kyng': "My right dere lord, I requyre the
 that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde
 byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The
 12 kyng'e sayd': "demaunde what thou wylt For I am
 wel contente." Clotyldys thenne sayd' to hym: "Fyrst,
 I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt
 byleue in god' of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made
 16 heuen and' erthe & that hath created' the. And' in
 Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng' of alle kynges,
 which by his passyon hath redemed' the. And' in the
 holy ghoost, confirmatour and' Illumynatour of al good
 20 werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the
 foresayd' Trynitye in one onely essen[ce], to whome
 ought to be gy¹uen al honour and' all lawde & byleue.
 Byleue ye in this holy byleue and' mageste and' leue
 24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng
 and vayn, and' thynke for to restore the holy chyrches
 whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the
 that thou wylt demaunde my parte and porcyon of the
 28 goodes of my fader and' of my moder of agabondus myn
 vnkle whom he dyd' put to deth falsely and' wythoute
 occasyon, but the vengeaunce I leue to god." whan she
 had said this the kyng' answerd: ¶ "Thou hast
 32 demaunded' me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer
 strait & hard to graunte, that is that I shold' forsake
 my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes
 two requests of
 Cloys.

First, that he will
 become a
 Christian

and forsake his
 false gods.

Secondly, that he
 will demand her
 dowry from Aga-
 bondus.

Cloys begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request.

Cloys sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

only god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye & byseche the that thou wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome only is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he shold as soone haue alle his royame as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyce of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyth all the frensshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayned to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24 peple, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysityng his royame The quene clotyldis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd 28 of a sone whome she dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do thereafter. And whan the chylde was baptysed anone it exspered 32 & dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene: "yf thou haddest gyuen hym and dedyed hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

¹ A vij, back. ² col. ij.

quene answerd: "for this thyng' I am noo thyng per-
 turbled in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges
 to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his
 royallme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,
 the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named
 lodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.
 And whan the kyng' sawe it languyshe he beyng' euyl
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"¹ sayd he,
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was
 12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng' them." Thenne the
 quene for the fere of the kyng' prayed to god deuoutely
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was
 16 guarryshed and hool.

A second son
 also falls ill after
 baptism,

but through the
 queen's prayers
 recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu
 Cryste: Capitulo iiij

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so
 perseueryng the ²allemayns had vycorye on
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-
 24 throwen & slayn. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the
 dystrectyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde
 the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see
 tofore your eyen the mortal dystrectyon of your peple,
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on."
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen
 and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the
 Germans,

but is defeated
 with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls
 on the king to be
 converted,

¹ Ed. how.

² A viij.

and the king
yields to his
entreaties.

Clois having
acknowledged
himself a
Christian prays
to God for aid.

He gains a victory
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty, on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4 socour that I may be vycictoryous of myn enemyes by experyence presently. I byleue¹ on the, and in thy name I shalle baptise me. I haue demaunded my goddes for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8 for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre the that I may be delyuerd by thy hye puyssaunce fro 12 myn aduer^ssaries." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & murdered began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng was deed, wherfore they that abode yelded them to 16 kyng cloyes and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that contreye vnder hys obayssaunce & puyssaunce payeng yerely trybute. Thenne after this vycictory by the puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20 recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned vycictorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24 Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle was brougt the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28 cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildie sends
for Remigius
to baptise Clois.

After that the quene had herde the kyng whyche was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the vycictorye whych he had obteyned she had grete 32 Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge byshop

¹ Ed. byleueue.

² col. ij.

- of raynes, a mochè holy man, whiche came to hyr for
to preche to the kyng¹ his saluacyon & the manere of
the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that
4 ¹he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to
excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst,
And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng² the
errour of thydolles they began al to byleue in god &
8 say: "Syr kyng³ glorious, it is best that ye forsake
thydolles and adoure the god⁴ Inmortal whome the
quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be
contente." Incontynent al this was shewed to saynt
12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them
dylygently as a good⁵ herdman that taketh grete payne
to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr
ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng⁶ and
16 hys prechyng⁷ dyd soo grete prouffyte that it made the
peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy bap-
tesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen.
wherfore the necessyte of the saluacion of thys kyng⁸
20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed to byleue, conioyned to
good⁹ entencyon maad¹⁰ affectuously saynt Remyge to
come, for he thought wel whan the kyng¹¹ was baptysed
and byleued in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements
24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold¹² do the same
wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had¹³
commyned with the kyng touchyng his salua¹⁴cyon
[he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptysen hym
28 honourably, and dyd do¹⁵ paynte the hystories after
somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and
repayred the places ryght delceyously. ¶ And on that
other he dyd do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,
32 & compose baptызatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan
al this was done ¹⁶y¹⁷ kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes,
and by his
preaching
converts the
whole French
nation.

who urge the
king to forsake
idolatry.

St. Remigius
makes prepara-
tions for the
baptism of Clois.

¹ A viij, back.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. to.

⁴ The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And theæne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

He delivers an
exhortation to
the king.

Remigius
declares the
articles of the
Christian faith.

Clois and all his
subjects are
baptised.

A dove brings
from heaven a
vessel containing
chrisam.

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of
god^d saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.
¶ "Syr kyngⁱ, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure en-
tencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4
this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al
vanyte and^d do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon.
And ye ought to byleue wyth ryȝt humble hert in one
onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8
ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created
heuen and^d erthe, to whome one onely ouȝt to gyue
fayth and^d creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,
whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature ¹wold^d 12
take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence
of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued^d in
the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy
ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16
deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed^d and roos
fro deth to lyf, and^d after ascended^d in to heuen, and^d
sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro
thens shal come and^d Iudge the lyuyngⁱ and^d deed^d. 20
¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque
moder, & her ordonnayre." and whan saynt Remyge
had ynough enformed the kyngⁱ and^d the peple of our
fayth and^d byleue he baptysed^d them in the name of the 24
fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan
he came to enoyntyngⁱ after the custome of the holy
cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the
plesyr of god^d and^d demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28
stondyngⁱ,² sodeynlye came doun descendyng fro heuen
a douue shynnyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy
ampull and^d lefte it in the same place where the holy
cresme was, wherwyth the kyngⁱ cloys was fyrst 32

[*printed* baptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr
manere: "Syr Kyng, it is tyme that ȝe ought of pure Inten-
cion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme ȝe haue
byleued on."

¹ B j.

² *Ed.* stondyugⁱ.

- enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therin the kynges of fraunce ¹onelye been
 4 enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng² and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete loye and exaltacion of glorye.
- 8 ¶ The second³ partye of the first book con-
 teyneth fyue chapytres, and⁴ speketh of the
 begynnyng⁵ of kyng⁶ Pepyn And⁷ Charle-
 mayn hys sone.
- 12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen
 kyng⁸ of Fraunce when the lygnage of
 kyng cloys faylled⁹ in successyon: ca. j
- 16 **T**He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng¹⁰
 Cloys the fyrst crysten kynge of the lordes of
 Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeded¹¹ from
 heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, whych
 was the kyng¹² Pepyn of another lygnage. And the
 20 Kynge whyche was the xxiiij after the kyng Cloys and
 of his lignage was named hildricus, the which ²kyng¹³
 deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse
 thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for
 24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn
 moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce.
 And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue suc-
 ceded¹⁴ of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn
 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed, I wyl
 here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende
 superfycially to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche
 is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn
 32 the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to
 the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde,
 That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a

with which all
 kings of France
 since have been
 consecrated.

After the death of
 Clois Hildricus
 becomes king,

but gives up
 the throne to
 become a monk.

Pepin's demand
 of Pope Zachary,

¹ col. ij.

² B j, back.

and the Pope's
answer.

The duties and
qualities of a
king.

He should not
keep too many
horses or
servants,

nor keep bad
company.

He should be a
good husband,
fond of learning,
just,

and, above all,
religious.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and parfyght
vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & traunaylle, or ellys
he that retcheth of noo thyng and is abandonned and
gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the 4
name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had herde thys
demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght
reason and veray equyte ought to be called a kyng that
gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & 8
contynueth it. For whyche ansuer & demaunde the
Frensshe men by counceyl¹ ²aprouued consydered
theyr kyng³ hyldrycus professed in a monasterye in lyf
solytarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12
yng⁴ ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen
solytaryly,) how wel a kyng⁵ ought not to be solytarye,
For suche as is the Kyng⁶ suche is the Royame. ¶ For
salamon sayth, yf the kyng⁷ be neclygent the peple 16
wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that
hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng⁸
wel enformed of the condycions apperteynyng⁹ to a
kyng after an auctour that sayth thus : ¶ "The Prynce 20
whan he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses super-
fluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought
to be, and ought not to take but seruauntes propyre³
and necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and not to nour- 24
ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffyt-
able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold eschewe
multyplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn
wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold not cor- 28
rupte hys subgettes by euyl example. He shold not
breke hys espousaylles, he shold gladly rede in bookes
& shold haue by hym peple wel lettered, And shold
Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges ⁴he 32
shold adoure & serue god: he shold not gladly take
yeftes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers."

¹ Ed. ceunceyl.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. propyce.

⁴ B ij.

- Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be
- 4 kyng¹ of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned nomore vpon the frensshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt
- 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles¹ the grete was confermed and approuued and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benediction to succede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the said
- 12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were opposauntes and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he
- 16 ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attributed by good ryght to hym by vycторыe obteyned, and was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.
- 20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had goten on the noble quene berte, doughter² of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had con-
- 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng Charles was chosen and maad Emperour of Rome. And the sayd kynge Pepyn regned xviiij yere in prosperyte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder
- 28 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the royaume ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouvernement hoolly of the royaume of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly
- 32 shewed.

Pepin is chosen king by the French,

and consecrated by St. Boniface.

He makes war against the English.

At his death he leaves two sons,

between whom his kingdom is divided.

On the death of his brother Charlemagne becomes sole king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

¹ *Ed. repeats* and charles.

² col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij

THis noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys 4 body, puyssaunce, and opperacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was¹ onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope ²adryan regned & 8 dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annulling the heresyas and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrchea. And to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the 12 seruyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyctorye of them in dyuers³ maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles 16 was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to paye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth 20 a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorned he took paye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr 24 he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. 28 And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops ⁴in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he 32 shal conferme and the rebellys that shal gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

His labours in the service of the church.

At the invitation of Pope Adrian Charles visits Rome.

He lays siege to Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council is held at Rome.

¹ Ed. he was. ² B ij, back. ³ Ed. dyners. ⁴ col. 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named
 Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of
 fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelite one to that
 4 other for to leoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.
 In that tyme many mortal warres duryng¹ the lyf of
 kyng¹ Pepyn & of charles and after that the royaume
 of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerd¹ of the mys-
 8 creauntes, And maad¹ pees not wythoute grete trauayll
 for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of
 the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned¹
 to hys playsyr he reduced¹ alle ytalye vnder the trybute
 12 of the royaume of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan
 ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to
 gyue thankynges and laude to god¹ moche deuoutelye
 for vycторыe that he had¹ and for excusyon doon vpon
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And there with the pope
 Adryan he maad¹ many constytucyons whyche by ryzt
 equyte ought wel to be obserued¹. And after he beyng¹
 thus in Rome vycторыous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned
 20 & consecrate kyng¹ of the ytalyens, And hys sone
 lowys was ordeyned¹ and consecrate kyng¹ vpon guyan.
 thys doon the Romainys whyche of grete ancyante were
 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them
 24 put to deth Constantyn. his sone wold haue regned¹ for
 themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the
 senatours and other Romainys; the whyche beyng in this
 poynte, after that they had¹ taken delyberacyon of grete
 28 counceyl, seeyng¹ the grete valure and noblesse of kyng¹
 Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse
 hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche
 hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he
 32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange &
 exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde
 of Pope Leo he was crowned¹ emperour with alle
 honoures that myght be comprysed¹. And al wyth one

After many
 bloody wars he
 reduces Italy
 under his power.

His son Pepin is
 consecrated king
 of Italy, and his
 second son Louis
 king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen
 Emperor of
 Rome.

¹ B iij.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng
of ytalyens. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of
the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iij

Of the good
works of Charles
during his reign
of 33 years.

¹ C Harlemayn Kyng of Fraunce after that he was
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8
regned emperour thyrte yere, And had thenne
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxiiij yere. And in
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was
his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth thexcercyte
of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of 16.
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man
wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys
syght and regarde fyers & malycyous. ¶ The lengthe 20
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure
of his feet, which were merueyllously long; fatte, and
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24
armes and thyres he had ample and large: he was a
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28
a foot longe: ²he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes:
A fayr regarde and countenance had thys man: he had
the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his 32
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng

According to
Turpin

Charles was
more than 8 feet
high, stout,
broad-shouldered,

and large of limb,

with a beard a
foot long.

His face was
long and fair:
his eyes bright
and sparkling.

- his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrded was viij
fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle
to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was
4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce
he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes,
or a grete ghoose, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok,
or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrelly
8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a
lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght
armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from
the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he
12 had bytwene hys handes iiij hors shoen wyth outh
ouermoche prouyng¹ hys myght he wold ryte them outh
and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one
hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym
16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had
in hym thre thynges moche honourable: Fyrst, in
yestes ye¹uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus
themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodigal
20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche
he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he
promysed thynges that he myght not gyue, forthwyth
he answered that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce
24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme
thynges. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement
that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was
pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte
28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespass. And,
thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduysed:
whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd &
whan one spake to hym he remembered the manere for
32 to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

His waist was
8 feet round.

At his dinner he
could eat a
quarter of
mutton, or a
goose, or a
peacock, or a
hare.

His strength
was wonderful.

He could lift an
armed knight
with one hand.

He was liberal to
all,

just and merciful,

and careful in his
language.

¹ col. 2.

¶ To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and
hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte
to doo : capitulo iiij

DAme bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4
dence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour
wexed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and
ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.
¶ Of ¹whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to 8
estudye, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence
to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan
they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the
seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12
for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he
made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse
the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd
not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beastes 16
and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to
chyualry contynuelly. After this he made his doughters
to spyne & sowe and to occupye them in other
honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20
slouth & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue
occasyon to falle in thougt dysordynate for to haue
Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not
occupied in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24
employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thyng to
thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the
pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do
alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28
holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencion
dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in
Acon in Almayn a ²chyrche of our lady comprysed of
meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyned, and 32
wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a
parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

Charles had his
sons taught
religion, science,

jousting,
the art of war,
and hunting.

His daughters
were taught to
spin and sew,
and other suitable
accomplishments.

Charles was never
idle, but fond of
study.

He built at Acon
a splendid church
to our Lady.

¹ B iiij.

² col. 2.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by puyssaunce in the royaume of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-

8 ters : capitulo

v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
contynued in them : And by ardaunt desyre
12 frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vysyted on mornynge and on euenes & in
the nyght oftymes, and at good festes he faylled not
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrifyses & oblations :
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely ¹the poure folke of
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &
syluer and vytayll after the necessitye of the place : as
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other
24 contreyes : as he that sayd : "golde and syluer is not
myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the
28 heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage Ioyous. he had
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
aboue alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper.
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede
the soule which is perpetuel of spyrituel fode, for to

Of the religious
habits of Charles,

his alms-giving,

both at home and
abroad.

He was large of
body, and of a
pleasing
countenance.

He loved to hear
books read,

¹ B iij, back.

especially the
De Civitate Dei
by Augustine.

He sent
commissioners to
study and report
on the state of his
kingdoms, and
the government
and laws of other
countries.

Aaron, king of
Persia, sends him
as a present an
elephant,

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker;
as of refecceyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,
And emonge al other bookes he delyted strongly in
the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche 4
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8
bedde two ¹or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.
Thus Charles perseuerd² in felicyte ryal and emperyal,
& sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and 12
grete counceyllours³ for to vysyte hys prouynces and
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and
made many constytucyons & lawes accordyng to the 16
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles
sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal
memorye. & euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that 24
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng
that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor
he excersycyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued & 28
dere reputed of euery body. In that tyme Aaron the
kyng of perce for the magnyfycence of charles sente to
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler
⁴yefte and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in
suche renomme of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* perseuerd.

³ *Ed.* counceyllours,

⁴ B v.

aaron the kyng¹ of Perse sente to hym emonge other
 yestes the bodyes of saynt Cyprian and of saynt
 speratus and the heed of saynt Panthaleon marters in
 4 to Fraunce.

and the relics of
 several saints.

¶ The thyrd¹ parte of the fyrst book conteyn-
 eth thre chapytres, and¹ speketh how by
 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd¹ the
 8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynyms.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to
 Charles for socours after that he was de-
 iecte and¹ caste oute of the Turkes: capi-
 12 tulo primo.

IT is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo
 oppressyd of the paynyms by mortall warre that
 16 vnnethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he
 knewe nomore what to do He had in remembraunce the
 noble charles and he beyng¹ enformed of hys holynes,
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the
¹cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and defendour of
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and to hys
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste
 and another whyche named hym self Dauyd archeprest,
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to
 28 charles, And wyth them tweyne he ordeyned for to goo
 wyth them two other whyche were named ysaac and
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Con-
 32 stantyn had wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:

The patriarch of
 Jerusalem, being
 hard pressed by
 the Saracens,

appeals to Charles
 for help.

Constantine
 writes a letter to
 Charles,

"On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that

¹ col. 2.

he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng¹ ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes : 'Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doying of the paynmys whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pouchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng¹ of the gallyens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy 8 chyrche.' And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had¹ hys shelde rede, gyrde wyth hys swerde, & had his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And 12 the heed of yron whyche was on hys caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynnyng and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body : 16 he had eyen shynnyng as ij sterres, and hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton : 'O thou August that neuer refuset the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynges : be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere² and kepe alwaye the comandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo formerly.'" And as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had deieted the paynmys oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myzt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan 28 the messagers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynmys. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and maa¹ hym to preche³ openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

¹ B v, back.

² Ed. preseuere.
³ col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete companye wente
4 for to conquere the holy lande, and many
other maters : capitulo ij

8 **A**fter that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was
publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct
and dyd do crye it thorough out al the contreye,
that euery man that myzt bere armes shold be redy for
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynymys, and he that wold
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycторыe vnder the con-
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in
to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne,
and Charles thought to passe it in ¹one daye : wherfore
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al
abashed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe ony habytacyon,
but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the
psalter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all
who can bear
arms to assemble.

An enormous
army comes
together, and
they start for
the Holy Land.

They lose their
way in a forest.

Charles prays to
God for help.

¹ B vj.

say the vers folowyng "Deduc me domine in semita
mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys
there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche
that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys: 4
"kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that
were presente were moche troubled. and notwythstond-
yng¹ al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter
vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8
whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye
and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? ¹O
frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the
Kyng¹ and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde 12
whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche
they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms
sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes
so doying. But whan charles & hys grete pyssaunce 16
were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled
of theyr comyng¹ & the crysten lordes were gretely
reioysed of theyr comyng¹. For wythoute cessyng¹ he
rested not tyl that he had recouerd the contreye of 20
cristen men and expelled alle the paynims whyche
moch redounded to hym grete honour & victorye.
And in retournyng¹ he demaunded of theemperour of
Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24
arkes & archepreestes. And theemperour helde hym an
hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for
thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates
of the cyte dyd do ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28
& dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer
and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it
for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon
in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32
he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to ²doo
in takyng¹ of the precyous & ryche yestes or to retourne
in to fraunce wythout takyng of any thyng, And there

A bird comes and
tells him his
prayer is heard,

and afterwards
guides them to
the right road.

Charles clears the
country of
Saracens,

and prepares to
return home.

The Emperor
collects a large
number of valu-
able presents for
him,

¹ col. 2.

² B vj, back.

vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no
 thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but
 for the loue of god onely: And he beyng wel content
 4 of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete
 payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles re-
 fuses to accept
 any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles
 brought fro constantynoble and' fro the
 8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were
 doon: capitulo iij

12 **W**Han themperour of constantynople and the
 patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles
 wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd,
 he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,
 & whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that
 for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat
 16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.
 Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast
 euery man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to
 deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in
 20 especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych
 shold treate & see the relyques. Whan it came to
 the thyrd day the noble Charles by grete contrycyon
 confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After
 24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the
 letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And
 there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche
 in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the
 28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute
 of the same so grete an odour that all they that were
 presente thought to be in paradys. Therne charles ful
 of hool and very creaunce of fayth kneled down to the
 32 grounde and stretched hym on therthe, & moche
 strongly prayed our lord that for the glorie of hys

He asks, instead,
 for some relics of
 Our Lord.

The Emperor
 gives him the
 sacred crown of
 thorns.

A delicious odour
issues from the
crown.

Charles deposits
the thorns and
flowers in a coffer,

where they are
turned into
manna, and
now are preserved
at St. Denys.

Three hundred
and one sick
persons are healed
by the scent of
the holy relics.

One who had been
blind, deaf, and
dumb for over 24
years.

name presently wold^d renewe the myracles of hys holy
passyon and glorious resurrexyon.¹ & assone as he had^d
prayed in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &
a meruayllous swete odour yssued^d out of the floures, ⁴
soo ryzt delycyous that eche man supposed^d that hys
vestementes & clothyng^r had^d comen oute of heuen.
¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kuttyng
wel purifyed^d to cutte the said crowne and in cuttyng^r ⁸
alwaye more & more the sayd crowne flourysshed^d and
the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the
²floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a
lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and wept ¹²
so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to
tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys
honde & supposed^d that the sayd Ebroin³ had^d holden
them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by ¹⁶
myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete
houre. And after whan he had^d gyuen in kepyng^r the
sayd thornes to the sayd Ebroin he sawe the coffret in
thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by ²⁰
them self, whiche sone after were conuerted in to manna
and in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.
And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of
the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. ²⁴
Thenne were there shewed^d myracles For al seek people
that were there present were heled^d of al theyr maladyes
by the odour of the floures aforesayd^d, and the peple
that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse ²⁸
of peple cryed^d verytably that day was a day of helthe
& resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous
floures alle the cytee was purifyed and replenysshed of
grace: for thre hondred^d & one seek man by compte ³²
were heled^d & guarissed of their maladyes. ⁴Emonge

al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre
monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, & dumbe, but at

¹ Ed. rosurrexyon.

² B vij.

³ Ed. Ebrom.

⁴ col. 2.

- moment¹ whan the thorne was drawn fro the crowne
 he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he
 recouuerd his heeryng, And in florysshynge of it he
 4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
 danyel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our
 lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence
 was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of
 8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was
 drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
 to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said
 that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarryshed
 12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the
 kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy
 sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady & the
 clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme
 16 of saynt Symeon; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes
 & caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in
 passyng by a castel there was a chylde newe dede
 whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
 20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan
 he came to Acon in Almayne, ²whyche is a moche fayr
 cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche
 fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of
 24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste
 were guarryshed & heled blynde men and seek men of
 the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij
 lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,
 28 lij of the fallyng sekenes, lxxv of the gowte, many of
 them of the same place & many of other maladyes.
 And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iul at
 Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the
 32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro
 Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was
 establyshed that one day of the weke of the fastyng of
 ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iul shold be made

and a child,
 a cripple from
 his birth,
 are healed by
 the relics.

The Emperor
 gives Charles a
 piece of the crosse,

and the holy
 napkin and other
 relics,

with which he
 performs numer-
 ous miracles.

They are
 deposited at Acon,
 where they are
 shown.

¹ Ed. meuyng.

² B vij, back.

this demo[n]strau[n]ce and notyfycacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus byssshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'. 8

¶ ¹The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called' mormy-onde charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrst chapytre. 16

I Haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfycially of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendyng' after my purpoos vnto Kyng charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of 20 hys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behauyng' I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyue by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrrour hystoryal" and in auncyent cronycles, And haue onelye translated them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maad of thauncyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned. which book after somme ²and moost comunely is called "Fyera-bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I shal make mencyon whyche was van-

All the first book
has been trans-
lated from the
Speculum
Historiale;

the second book
I have translated
from an old
Romance,
called 'Fiera-
bras,'

¹ col. 2.

² B vijj.

- quysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed & was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche
- 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunce of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wherfore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to denyde the
- 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I shal conne, wythoute to adiouste ony thyng that I haue not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to
- 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles whiche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and
- 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexcercyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones, & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I
- 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of myllon ¹erle and of dame berthe propre syster of kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuar Erle, sone of Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexcersyte
- 24 of kyng Charles: After hym Rychard of Normandy, Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys, Hoel Erle of Nautes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of denmarke, Lambert prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk
- 28 of banyer, Thiery duc of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoy, Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at rounceuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there
- 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to

and have only reduced the ancient ryme into prose,

without adding anything.

The Peers of France, though commonly said to be 12 or 13,

were more than that number.

They were Roland,

Oliver,

Richard,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,

Naymes, Thiery, Basin,

Ganellon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris, and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the mcoost parte of them
that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thex-
cersyte of Charles : capitulo [j] 4

Fierabras, son of
Balan, was a
mighty giant. (50)

He was king of
Alexandria, (58)
Babylon, Russia,
and Jerusalem.
(66)

This Fierabras
rides furiously
up to the camp of
Charles, (76)

wishing to find
some Christian
to fight with him.

THe admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym
moche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple,
had a sone ¹named Fyerabras the moost meruayl-
lous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8
the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his
strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was
kyng of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of
babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12
& of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iheru-
salem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu
Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in
to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare awaye the 16
holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other
relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende
recounte how they were recouerd. And he was called
Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20
& bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the
paynyms and thexcersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras
moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to
fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24
came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furyous
and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel
fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that
he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28
vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of them-
perour charles ²whyche were of the aygle shynnyng,
And he sware by Mahomet his god & by his myzt
that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32
made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

¹ B viij, back.

² col. 2.

that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye
 voys : " O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,
 sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of
 4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as He challenges
 Roland or
 Oliver, (96)
 Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoyis ; &
 swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse
 vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued
 8 of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I
 of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyzt
 thou shalt of me be assaylled & dyscomfytet & I shal
 smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng ;
 12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,
 meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragiously & folylly as euyl
 and olde thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye
 wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastely to departe." These He takes off his
 armes and lies
 down under a
 tree, (90)
 16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto
 the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym
 of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his
 hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he
 20 began to crye ¹with an hye voys : " o charlemayn,
 kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue
 thys day so ofte called ? wythoute more lenger delaye
 sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom
 24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or
 ogyer the danoyis whom I haue herde preysed. And yf
 perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly
 late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-
 28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.
 And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For
 vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn
 excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to
 32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for
 be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I
 be fugytyf for ony frenshe man lyuyng. I haue here
 tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten He declares he has
 already slain ten
 kings in single
 combat, (106)

kynges of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard¹ of Normandye sayd² to
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4
ca. iij

Charles enquires
who the strange
knight is. (115)

Assoone as fyerabras had fynysshed³ hys wordes the
Emperour Charles whyche¹ wel had herde hym
meruaylled² moche of hys langage, And demaunded³ 8
Rychard⁴ of Normandye what was that Turke that so had
cryed wyth soo hys a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys
persone. For kyng Charles sayd⁵ : "I haue wel herk-
ened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12
ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte."
To whome Rychard⁶ Duke of normandye ansuerd : "Syr
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the
strengest borne of moder : And he is a sarasyn of so 16
grete fyerste that he ne preysyth kyng ne erle ne none
other persone of the world."

Richard tells
him. (120)

Charles swears
that one of his
knights shall
accept the
challenge, (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood¹ hym he began to clawe
his heed², And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20
he shold³ not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres
of fraunce shold⁴ goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded⁵
of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was
named⁶. ¶ Rychard⁷ answerd : "syr Emperour, this 24
paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to
redoubte and hath done moche harme to⁸ crysten men.
He hath slayn the Pope, hanged⁹ abbottes, monkes, and
nonnes, and hath deffuled¹⁰ chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28
robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and
many other relyques¹¹ for whome ye take grete payne.
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And
the holy sepulcre wherin god was buryed." Wherupon 32
Charles ansuerd : "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. or.

³ C j, back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn
 I shalle neuer haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accom-
 plysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoeued and troubled
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will
 never rest till
 some one does
 so. (129)

Charles asks
 Roland to accept
 the challenge,
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij

WHan themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
 toysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr
 16 vnle, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take
 ar-¹mes or hors for to luste lyke as ye say. For on the
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynys,
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole
 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auaunte
 openlye that the olde and auneynt knyghtes whyche
 28 ye had brougt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And euery man
 knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and
 32 wery of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my
 faders soule that was euyl sayd of you. ¶ And now it
 shal be knowen how the olde & auneynt knyghtes shal

but Roland re-
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles
 that he had
 sneered at him
 and his com-
 panions the pre-
 vious night. (148)

Charles in a rage
strikes him in
the face with his
gauntlet. (166)

Roland draws his
sword (168)
on his uncle.

Charles orders
him to be
seized, (176)

but no one dares
to approach
him. (181)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his
subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that
euer shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym
to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland 4
had spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle hauyng
moche Indignacion therat ¹smote hym thwarte the vysage
wyth hys ryght gauntelet² that hys nose breste a blood
habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a 8
grete furye sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe
hys blood, and had smeton hys vncle yf he had not be
lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles
sawe thentencyon of Roulland he was meruayllously 12
abashed & sayd: "O god of heuen, who wold haue
thought that I shold haue had vylonye of Rolland my
neuue whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst
our aduersaryes? And he cometh rennyng³ agenst me 16
wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my
blood and lignage that here is present, And that more
sonner shold socoure me than any other! ¶ Now I
beseche God that on the crosse suffred passyon that this 20
day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said
in a grete furour he comaunded the frensshe men &
sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shal neuer
ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the frensshe 24
men vnderstood the commaundem[e]nt of Charles for to
haue accomplysshed it that one loked vpon that other
for to see who wold sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And
whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel 28
a-parte³ wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng with an
hyghe voys and sayeng to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde
you styлле, For I make a-vowe to god that yf any of you
mooue to come to me I shal make of hys heed two 32
partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that
was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were
ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate. and there

¹ C ij.

² Ed. ganntetst.

³ col. 2.

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and sayd to hym : "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vncle the emperour, whom
 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hys Ire : "Syr Ogier, I promyse you for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete outrage
 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes and settles the quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been repleued' by the auctour and' somewhat
 12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

V POn the debate of themperour and Rolland hys neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to
 1 the kyng Charles, whyche haste be Instructe
 16 syth thyn Infancye in alle scyences ful of maners digne of commemoracyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of the aunicyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple. why saydest thou on the euene that the aunicyent and
 20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them better than the yonge knyghtes? And thou knewest wele that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-
 24 land thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng whiche is not in the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys
 28 at the word that sayth : "Vindictam differ donec pertranseat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate thy vengeance tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it
 32 was wythout aduys of grete dycescyon. thou smotest hym samblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's reproof of Roland and Charles.

Charles ought to have remembered the noble deeds of Roland, and his youth,

and should have restrained his anger, even under provocation.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym
 thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.
 Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesyastes whyche sayth :
 "Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:" whan ¹a man re- 4
 ceyueth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo
 that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a per-
 sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome
 he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng⁴ is blame^d, 8
 of soo moche the more is he euyll contente and wrothe.
 For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was
 it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be alowed
 & preysed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12
 that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had doon
 better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O
 Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh
 in the suche audacyte to speke ageynst thyn vncl 16
 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes
 been worthy to be remembred? To hym which is
 emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremeur,
 and to thyn vncl as taken debate and ansuerd out- 20
 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre
 hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-
 let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy
 swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24
 obeyssaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou
 were not aduysed of thys that thapostle saith: "ye
 yonge men ²kepe your courage And put not the furour
 therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28
 preysed thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou
 haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in
 hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is
 more aun cyent than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32
 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is
 suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym
 sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent:

Roland ought to
 haue remembered
 the respect he
 owed to his uncle,

according to the
 words of St. Paul:
 "Rebuke not an
 elder, but entreat
 him as a father."

¹ col. 2.

² C iij.

wherefore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agens

4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**Oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce :
 “Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Iniuryed my persone, To whome I had more affyaunce than to ony man lyuyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne
 12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further¹more I haue noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym that hath challenged me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore hym Naymes the Duc of bauyers whych sayd to the
 16 kyng : “Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuer theles the kyng was in grete thought, For there was
 20 none that wold geo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente the tydynges of the debate of charles and Rolland were brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen
 24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle Olyuer, replenysshed wyth a noble courage and wyth an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng, whan he had
 28 herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and began for to scratche and strayne hys armes and to fele yf it were possyble to hym to bere armes.

Charles appeals to his knights to settle who sh-ll accept the challenge. (190)

Naymes tries to cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how none can be found to accept the challenge. (206)

He calls for his arms. (210)

And he thus dooyng his woundes began newly to
 32 opene that the blood sprange oute of the dystresse.
 ¶ And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not moche therby

His wounds break out afresh.

¹ col. 2.

and his esquire
remonstrates with
him, (220)
but in vain.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps
him to arm, (234)

and brings him
his horse. (240)

Oliver mounts,
(241)

takes his arms,

For the grete loue and desyre ¹that he had to the
kyng [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse
he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he
shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym ⁴
for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn
sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your
owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee
your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- ⁸
ment no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and
auauncement and renomnee. And wyth good ryght I
may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn-
guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensshe man ¹²
auaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the
comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys
frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn arimes wyth-
oute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme ¹⁶
hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his
legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys har-
nays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he
took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde ²⁰
he moche loued.

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall
that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne.
And whan he was brought tofore hym alle saddled ²and ²⁴
bryddled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the
sadle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette
hys shelde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty
spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after ²⁸
smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the
leepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was
a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche
fyers countenance. And they that were presente by- ³²
sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym
in hys keepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst
the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

¹ C iij, back.

² col. 2.

- was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is
 Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant
 of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of
 4 god the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on
 horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his
 body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of
 Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wyll of god,
 8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comferte and ayde
 after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was
 byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys
 body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth
 12 vnto the lyces of ¹themperour Charles with whom was
 the Duc naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondy-
 dyer, and Ogyer the danoys, wyth other barons of
 fraunce²: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vncl the
 kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he
 had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was
 requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was
 20 moche alowed & preysed of one and other & moche
 affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put down
 his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng, And
 reuerently came & salowed hym, and after sayd to hym:
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-
 gular lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that
 there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your
 seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I
 28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde
 me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre." To whom the
 kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by
 my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wyll. And
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte,
 borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng
 that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed
 to you." "Syr kyng," said ³Olyuer, "I am not comen

commends him-
 self to God, (256),

and rides
 to Charles's
 tent. (257)

Roland regrets
 his refusal of the
 challenge. (260)

Oliver salutes
 the king,

reminds him of
 his long and
 faithful services,
 (268)

¹ C liij.

² Ed. Freunce.

³ col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (287)

Charles remonstrates with him. (292)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganellon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yefte to be quyte 4 of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them looked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and sharpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make mencyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20 deygned in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is lugeð, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij luge & ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo ¹the bataylle." wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24 chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyl dysposycyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28 my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world shal not saue the but that thou shalt dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32 kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly: "God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that

¹ C iiij, back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold^d goo and
 doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd : "I praye
 god^d of the fymramente gyue the grace to do wel & that
 4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght
 gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued^d
 wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankynge hym ryght
 humbly and takynge leue of al moche swetely.

and gives Oliver
his glove.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred^d by his fader
 reynner that he shold not fyght wyth the
 geaunt, but for al that he went forth :
 ca. vij

12 **W**Han that Olyuer was lycenced^d for to goo do
 hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner
 of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
 grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd :
 16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
 and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me
 whan I see that my sone gooth to perdyceyon seeynge
 the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
 20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
 ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded^d dangerously.
 ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that
 hath loste of hys blood^d may not wel endure bataylle."
 24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen
 to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wythli-
 stondynge these wordes doubted^d no thyng^d but that he
 shold^d wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet
 28 ageyn reynner requyred the kyng and sayd : "Syr kyng,
 in thonour of hym that for vs deyed^d on the crosse
 suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue
 lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel
 32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-
 perour Charles answerd : "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

Reyner appeals to
Charles not to
allow Oliver to
fight,

but in vain.

Reyner again
protests and
appeals.

Oliver bids his
comrades fare-
well.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For
in sygne of ly¹cence I haue gyuen hym my gloue,
wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd
wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, 4
and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that
is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon
in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name
of god ye pardonne me." whan the frenssh men herde 8
hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-
derly, and soo takyng¹ hys leue wyth his standard
reyesd The kyng¹ blessyd hym in making the sygne of
the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the keypyng 12
of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghoost.

Charles gives him
his blessing.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche
sette noo thyng by hym, with other dis-
putacions: capitulo viii 16

Oliver rides up to
Fierabras, (344)

O Lyuer departed & rode forth on hys waye & taryed
not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which
was al vnarmed and laye in the shadowe. and
whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym turned 20
his heed ayenst hym and dayned vnnethe to loke on hym.
For he setted nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel
of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne
Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, ²thou hast 24
thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And
I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras
answerd to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I
owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28
world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I
am he that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye rome
your cyte, & slewe the Pope and many other and bare
awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye 32
take grete payne and laboure to recouer them. And

and demands his
name. (351)

Fierabras tells
him, and boasts
of his exploits.
(362)

¹ C v.

² col. 2.

- furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulchre in whych your god rested." Olyuer answereth:
 "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche
 4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast
 sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well
 vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng,
 make the redy and arme the. seest thou yonder the
 8 frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs?
 wherfore depesshe the, or¹ by the god on whome I by-
 leue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyer-
 abras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to
 12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens
 that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so
 hastyly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens
 tyll ²I knowe who thou arte and of what lyngage.
 16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt
 see me armed." Olyuer answerd to hym: "O paynem,
 know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt
 knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the
 20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion
 of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue
 the creaunce of thy god Mahoun, & of other ydolles,
 whyche ben but abusyon and decepeyon: whych haue
 24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good vnder-
 stondyng. wherfore that thou enclyne the to consente
 and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in god almyghty
 the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy
 28 ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wyll:
 whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there
 in dwelleth: whyche for our saluacion wolde be borne
 of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalt haue this
 32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is
 vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorye
 eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

Oliver bids him
arm himself.
(384)

Fierabras asks his
name and rank.
(386)

Oliver calls on
Fierabras to
renounce Maho-
met, (395)

and repeats the
articles of the
Christian faith.
(398)

¹ Ed. For.

² C v, back.

³ Ed. consecracion.

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (402)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes. (408)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (425)

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must ¹come and fyght ayenst 4 me For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charle- mayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyed 12 and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoyes and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: 16 "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, & of hys 20 maners, as of hys puyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other freysshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- 24 aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou ²auaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys 28 heed and sayd: "By my god mahommet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyshonour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, 32 For certeyn I haue entencyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

¹ col. 2.

² C vj.

- shelde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage." Fierabras asks Oliver his name. (441)
- Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knight by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the. Oliver tells him he is Garin, a poor knight. (448)
- 8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was
- 12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete renomnee ¹as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuerd: Fierabras asks him why Ogier or Oliver has not come to meet him. (454)
- 16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the Oliver says it is because they despise him. (457)
- 20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the apostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I Fierabras says he never fights except with a king or a noble. (465)
- 24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me
- 28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle doun to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde
- 32 and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (470)

not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym : " Thy fayt
lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of ¹folysse pre-
sumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euen-
songe tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. 4
I am none hare ne wylde beest for to be aferde, And
thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there
is a tyme of spekyng and tyme of beyng styлле, And of
one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8
come of & depesse the of that I haue sayd the or
ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : " I desyre
ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me
Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12
rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to
come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they
shal not be refused." In makyng these desputacyons
Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16
opened by force of rydyng and of chauffyng & bledde
sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is
knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that
blood that soo renneth down to therthe : " I trowe thou 20
be hurte." Olyuer sayd : " I am not hurte but my hors
is harde atte spore wherof he is bloody." Fyerabras be-
helde & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd :
" Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24
in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh
doun by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the :
there been two flagons hangyng on the saddle of my hors
whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28
Iherusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god was
enbawmed wyth whan he was taken doun fro the
crosse and layed in hys grane. hye the, and goo
drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32
thou shalte be hole and thenne thou shalt mowe defende
the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer anserd that
he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

Oliver threatens
him. (484)

Fierabras asks for
one of the douze-
peres.

He sees the blood
run from Oliver's
wound, (497)

and asks if he is
wounded? Oliver
says, "No."

Fierabras offers
to cure him with
the holy balm,
(510)

but Oliver re-
fuses.

¹ C vj, back.

² col. 2.

fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason,
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'

- 4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name:
ca. ix

- 8 **W**Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wyth-
oute arysyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and
after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-
oute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer
that been soo moche redoubted of paynems, & of what
12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchyng
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than ¹I am, but of
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world
but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a
thyng wherof I am moche abashed. For yf they
were suche foure as thou tellest to me I wold not refuse
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue
pacyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy
to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,² By mahoun
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng' ne
alle thy goddes³ shal not redeme the but that thou shalt
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks
him to describe
Roland and
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he
would not be
afraid of four
such. (536)

¹ C vij.

² Ed. personr.

³ Ed. goodes.

Oliver at last
induces Fierabras
to rise. (546)

He is 15 feet
high.

He bids Oliver go
back and send
Roland, or Ogier,
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks
Oliver to help him
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a
noble example of
chivalry and
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd : "thou hast vaunted the ouer-
longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy
lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by
ouer ¹moche spekyng¹ otherwyse than trouthe may 4
brynge the soone to myschyef." Herof was fyerabras
strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete
fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot
longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in 8
Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure.
And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by
cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym,
and sayd to Olyuer : "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12
thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in
the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou
retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer,
or Gerard de mondydyer, and² expressely say to Olyuer 16
that I shall not passe thys auauntgarde tyl I haue
conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the
paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had
smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20
must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed
hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer de-
maunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd :
"helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24
neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man
lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his
diligence ²to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of
arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28
his habergeon of stele wele boucled & polysshed : &
after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth
precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the
facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32
was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche
were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to
slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

¹ col. 2.

² C vij, back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to
 destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to
 the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte
 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to
 therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous
 bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dys-
 armed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he
 8 had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded
 to arme hym that shold fyzt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what
 grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche
 were of fayth and creaunce contrarye! I suppose that
 12 god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce
 emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse.
 But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras
 was wel armed he than¹ked moche Olyuer, And after
 16 gyrde hys swerde named plourance.² and in the arson
 of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was
 named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche
 swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none
 20 harnoyis but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And
 who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were
 made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I
 haue founden by wrytyng. ¶ On a tyme there were
 24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that
 one was named Galaus, that other Munyfyans, & the
 thyrd was called Agnisiax. These iij brethern made
 ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiax the thyrd
 28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche
 had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, & also
 plourance,² and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes
 fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyfyans, that other
 32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named
 durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called
 sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the
 danoyis had. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

Would that there
 were such between
 all Christian
 men!

Fierabras takes
 his three swords,

made by one of
 three brothers,

by another of
 whom Durendal
 and Cortan were
 made,

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* plousance.

and by the third
Joyous and
Floberge.

Fierabras takes
with him the two
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of
his horse.

Fierabras wishes
Oliver to retire.
(556)

Oliver refuses.
(565)

Fierabras con-
fines Oliver on his
faith and loyalty
to reveal his true
name. (637)

the sword that was named Floberge, another called
haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charle-
mayn had for a grete specyalte. and these ¹iiij brethern
aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4
And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe
And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And
henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and
bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8
And in the myddle of the same shelde was paynted hys
god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym
to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was
sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12
to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on
hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, &
pommellyd, whyche had a specyal condycyon: For whan
his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16
sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson
than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsback
Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer: "O garyn, gracious and
curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20
thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without
fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage."
Olyuer answerde: "alwaye thou spekest of grete folye
for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24
membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make
aferde: for ²by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day
shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the
emperour." Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28
was meruayllously abashed of thys man that wold not
lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue
the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym: "Thou art a
crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32
you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche
thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast
gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

¹ C viij.

² col. 2.

naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles
 themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of
 fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght
 4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,
 Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche
 wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely
 myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherefore knowe thou
 8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, Oliver tells him,
(650)
 the moost especyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the
 twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye
 thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest
 12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not
 make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,
 sir Oliuer, ¹are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete
 dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye
 16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold
 be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue
 don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I
 wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."
 20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by
 my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no
 courage to lape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you
 wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer
 24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:
 "O paynym, or we procede any ferther now I admonest
 the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche Oliver again begs
Fierabras to be-
come Christian.
 hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng^e owen
 28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh
 not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake
 Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepeyon, &
 dyspose the to be baptysed, & thou shalt haue to thy
 32 frende the grete charles and a specyall felowe of Rolland
 the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my
 lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras
 ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

¹ C viij, back.

The Saracen
refuses.

For for no thyng¹ I shalle not byleue in your god ne
shal ¹forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day
yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so des-
playsaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4
the."

¶ How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyzt, &
of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of
other maters : capitulo x 8

Fierabras offers
Oliver some of
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.
(602)

The French pray
for Oliver's
success,

and especially
Charles.

At the first onset
their spears are
broken,

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it
was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors
renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd : "my frende, I
praye the þat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12
vertue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou
shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst
me." "God forbède," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke
thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16
harnoyis fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete theyr
horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter-
aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other
the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20
fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And
emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd : "O blessyd
Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte
of Olyuer my ²baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24
ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after feruently came
in to hys chapel hydyng his vysage wyth hys mantel
and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucyfyx
wyth grete teeres, sayeng : "My lord god, of whome I 28
see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe
Olyuer, whyche for thexaltacyon of the crysten fayth
is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles
fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32
sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force
bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

¹ col. 2.

² D j.

- sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned
that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the
brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.
- 4 Bothe twayne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr and both are
stunned.
eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not
on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe
were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce
- 8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took Oliver cuts off a
part of Fierabras'
helmet, (616)
haulteclere meruayllously shynynge & cam vpon Fyera-
bras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a
stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it
- 12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the
grounde; and with ¹the same stroke in descendynge he
touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued
hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore
- 16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and and nearly un-
horses him.
almost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men
sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a
stroke hath Olyuer gyuen² to thys paynym!" "ye,"
- 20 sayd rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! ¶ Now
wold god of heuen," sayd Rolland, "that I were now
vnder the shelde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of
me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."
- 24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd: "Ha! euyl gloton,
I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not
now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou
woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of
- 28 me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no
thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras
al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath
with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course
- 32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke³ vpon his helme so
sharply that he trenched moo than ve maylles, and
hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot
& a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

Fierabras strikes
Oliver on the
helmet,
and wounds his
horse. (501)

¹ col. 2.² Ed. gylene.³ Ed. stooke.

Oliver calls on
God and the
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again
offers to let him
go,

on account of his
wound,

but Oliver defies
him. (597)

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras ¹was al bloody :
of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he
had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was
bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4
hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen
to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ “O
lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I
receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8
pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of
thys paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue
hym :” and made vpon hym self the sygne of the
crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : “Olyuer, by 12
Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde :
now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no
meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but
I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16
þ^e stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not
see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now
to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuer-
theles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20
be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my
strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I
see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth
my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24
charles loueth ²the not moche whan he sendeth the to
me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte
shetes thou haddest been moche better.” whan Olyuer
herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28
courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : “O
Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to
brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god
almighty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32
I deffye the ! we haue ouer long pleted.” vpon these
wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously
eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

¹ D j, back.

² col. 2.

naylles, and crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and
 floures been hewen, broken, and flowen to the grounde.
 the fyre yssued oute largely, makynge grete bruyt with
 4 the swerdes vpon their harnois. In this whyle Charles
 was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele
 of Olyuer was trewe and iuste and that god ought to
 preserue hym, and whan he thought that Olyuer myght
 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd: ¶ "O
 glorious god, for whome we take payne, I praye the to
 conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I
 swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn
 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chirche
 shal clerke ne preest be requested ne enhabyted, but I
 shal do brezne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & crucy-
 fyxes." "Alas," sayd Duc naymes, "Syr kyng, leue
 16 these wordes vayne and ydle, & praye god for Olyuer
 that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy." Al thys
 whyle perseuerd the ij champyons fyghtyng and smyt-
 yng eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth
 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made
 hym falle on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf
 he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys
 body and specyally in the breste and had thenne loste
 24 soo moche of hys blood that he was moche feble,
 whyche was no merueyle, seen that he had resysted
 ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of
 moder.

Their armour is
 cut to pieces.

Charles prays for
 Oliver's success,

and vows if he is
 killed every
 church shall be
 burnt.

Naymes reproves
 him.

Oliver is very
 weak from loss of
 blood.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan
 he felte hym hurte : capitulo xj

32 **O**lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of
 the grete woundes that he had in hys body took
 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: "O glory-
 ous god, cause & begynnyng of al that is aboue & vnder
 the fyrmamente, which for your owne playser fourmed

Oliver offers up a
 prayer,

¹ D ij.

our fyrst fader Adam and for ¹hys companye gauest
vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is
conceyued, gyuyng^t to them lycence to ete al maner
fruytes reserued onely one, of whyche Eue by the 4
recounting the
fall of Adam,
moeuyng of the serpent caused Adam to ete, wherfore
they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of
helle many haue ben deceyued & dampned : wherof ye
had pyte of the perdycon of the world and came for 8
the annunciation,
to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious
vyrgyn marye by thannuncyacion of the holy Aungel
Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased you. And anone
after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12
saunce and wyth golde, encence, and myrre made to
you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be
the slaughter of
the Innocents,
slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in Ioye per-
manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter- 16
mynded ye went in the world prechyng to your frendes.
Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged
the Crucifixion,
on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght
by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde ; & 20
whan he byleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your
precious blode he recouerd his syt fayre & clere &
cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your
frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture : ²the thyrde 24
the Resurrection,
day after aroos and took ageyn lyf and descended in to
helle, And took out Adam and Eue and al them that
and the
Ascension.
were worthy to haue paradys. And the day of your
meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended in to heuen in the 28
presence of al your apostles. Thus my god, my maker,
as thys is trouthe and I byleue it verayly and fermly,
be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I
may vaynquyshe hym in suche wyse that he may be 32
He crosses him-
self.
saued." And this said he blessyd hym with his swerde
in makyng the sygne of p^e crosse in the name of god
the holy trynityte, and smote his hors vpon the hope of

¹ col. 2.² D ij, back.

the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng :

"Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not
fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my
4 god termagaunt I wold gladly here it." "Now wold
god of heuen," sayd Olyuer, "that thou were in suche
grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo,
For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I
8 doo Roulland."

Fierabras laughs
at him,
and asks what his
prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym : "by my god
Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche
grete folye?"

- 12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd'
the bawme & ¹dranke therof at hys ease,
and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors
was slayn : capitulo xij

- 16 **F**yerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of oliuer in
grete Ire sayd to hym : "kepe the wel fro me, for
I deffye the!" "I am redy," sayd Olyuer, "for
to god I commaunde me." & so thenne they recountred

The struggle is
renewed (602) so
fiercely that the
ground shakes.
(607)

- 20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that
the fyre myzt haboundantlye be seen spryng oute of
theyr harmoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and
the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder
24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde
and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the
breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen
torned in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunged.

Fierabras wounds
Oliver in the
breast.

- 28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn
marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete
cirtosye sayd to hym : "Olyuer, vnderstonde me,
descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and
32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-
ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

Fierabras again
offers Oliver some
of the holy balm,

defende the ageynst me and thou shalt recoure newe
 but Oliver refuses strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude
 it. do though ¹he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe
 fighting he wold haue it. And anone came that one 4
 ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that
 Oliver pierces Fyerabras' thigh. Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde
 entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the
 blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And 8
 He drinks some of the balm, and is at once made whole again. whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme
 and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-
 ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys
 paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made 12
 to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue
 that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche
 emong al other loued hym moast enterly. But whan
 Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme 16
 so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym
 and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the
 Oliver cuts the stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by
 cord by which the whyche the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the 20
 vessels are tied. hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a
 lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or
 the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and
 He seizes one, drinks some of the balm, and is healed of his wound. took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, 24
 & anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,
 & thought that ²yf by aduenture fyerabras were more
 hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles
 that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. 28
 wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the
 barylles & threwe them therin whyche were anone
 sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt
 Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboute the water 32
 euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were
 loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &
 by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

¹ D iij.² col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were
 more worth than al the golde in the world: but I
 promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben
 4 dere solde, For I shall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy
 heed:" and thys sayeng^r he came ayenst hym, but Fierabras reviles him for doing so,
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he
 dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the
 8 defence wyth his shelde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer-
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard pat hys helme was
 desmaylled & broken, but he was not hurte, & the and breaks his helmet,
 stroke descended so inpytuously pat he cutte asondre the
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and thenne
 was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblaunte ¹to renne
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd
 16 byfore, but helde hym styлле aboute hys propre custome.

¶ How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten to-
 gyder afote merveyllously, and' of the
 prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer:
 20 capitulo viij

MOche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.
 ¶ And thenne kyng Charles kneled down to therthe &
 maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to
 hym: "o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the
 foule this day ageynst me. In the mornyng thou hast
 32 so moche preysed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v
 knyghtes came ageyust the thou woldest abyde and
The French wish to help Oliver,
but Charles forbids them.
Oliver reproaches the Saracen for killing his horse. (588)

¹ D iij, back.

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage." Fyerabras ansuerd: "I knowe wel that thou ¹sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wyll. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende doun of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomeld: And I promyse the thou shalt be well horsed. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abashed as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn and dede." Olyuer ansuerd: "I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and Iustly wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynnueng the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto ²other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym ryghe to me in helthe." ¶ In-contynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be ouercome and that my ryght at

Fierabras declares
it was accidental,

and offers to give
him his own
horse,

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps
off his horse,

and they fight on
foot.

Reyner appeals to
Charles to send
help to Oliver,
or at least to pray
for him.

¹ col. 2.

² D iiij.

- thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make auowe that al crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &
- 4 after kneled down with bothe his knees¹ to the grounde & prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for our sauacyon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious
- 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys world ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng¹ Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there
- 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed you to ordeyne: of ²whiche adam ete & was dysobey-saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for
- 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte & vs also ye were contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after that the traytour³ Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortally
- 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of thornes: and after Longyus smote you in the ryght syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he had leyd on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe
- 24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and
- 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to
- 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed."
- ¶ He thys sayeng¹ & other deuoute wordes in hys secrete oratorye Our⁴ lord sente to hym an aungel fro heuen whyche sayd to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour

Charles at first threatens to destroy every church if Oliver is killed,

and then prays for Oliver's success,

recounting the Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of our Lord's side by Longius,

the descent into hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination of Baptism.

An angel appears

¹ Ed. knees.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. traycour.

⁴ Ed. Out.

and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot

through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from ¹god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wynne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquysshe the paynym." 4 thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon. Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll-8 yng' to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng' deuaunced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng 12 angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryzt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in 16 whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the payne that he had of smytyng, and he desyryng' to smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys suerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moued 20 and abasshed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And layed hys shelde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstondyng the paynym smote ²hym twyes so 24 myghtyly that he brake hys shelde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde : and moche sodeynlye the frensshe 28 men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed of his swerde armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that 32 god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

¹ D iiij, back.

² col. 2.

- hym. and notwythstondyng¹ al thys the paynym dyð
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I
 haue opteyned² vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now
 wel that thou art ynough vaynquysshed sythe that thou
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the
 tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for t.
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued &
 the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god
 12 ful of bounte, & ¹I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for
 god forbede that euer I shold be of entencion to forsake
 20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his
 holy sacrements which haue been establysshed for my²
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to
 hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete
 28 thou³ mayst wel auaunte the. For neuer was I of
 persone so trauailed ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou
 oughtest wel to be praysed. I am contente that thou
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute com-
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a
 woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and
 bounte, but for the ⁴valewe of x thousand marke of

Fierabras mocks
at Oliver,

and offers, if he
will renounce
Christianity, to

give him his sister
Floripas in mar-
riage.

Oliver says, "God
forbid!"

Fierabras declares
he never met any
one so obstinate.

Fierabras then
offers to let him
pick up his sword,

¹ D v. ² Ed. fo rmy. ³ Ed. thon. ⁴ col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytie & frendshyp & thenne 4 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wyll of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wyne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thyng shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous & glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortly thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he
will win it back
in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was van-
quysshed by Olyuer after that he had
recouerd one of the swerdes of fyerabras:
capitulo viiij 16

WHan Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers
of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle.
For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he
myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20
dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys
hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no mer-
uayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he
beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24
was broken in two partyes. but as it playseed to god he
loked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on
the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych
I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28
quyckely and took one of the swerdes whych was named
baptisme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone
meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put
tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32
he was nyghe hym he began to say: "O kyng of

Fierabras comes
against Oliver,

who, looking
round in fear,

sees the Saracen's
horse, on which
are two swords.

He runs and seizes
one, Baptism,

¹ D v, back.

- Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pour-
ueyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you.”
- 4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so
speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: “O
baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony
8 mans that is lyuyng!” And after behelde olyuer sayeng:
“By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne
swerde and late me ¹haue myn and thenne late vs fyght
12 as we haue begonne.” “by my hede,” sayd Olyuer,
“that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make
ony pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys swerde
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long
16 haue we sermoned.” Thys sayeng & other thynges
Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote
hym fyrst, but he myzt not attayne hym on the hede
but that he recountred first the shelde of the paynym,
20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half
flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that
stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne
24 olyuer blessyd hym that had forged that swerde and so
wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they
were in partye descouered of theyr helmes. And whan
Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers
28 and courageous he sayd: “O lord god of heuen, maker
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful
of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in
his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I
32 shold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie
moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone
²that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

and defies
Fierabras,

who asks him to
give up Baptism,
and take his own
sword in ex-
change,

but Oliver refuses,

and with a blow
breaks the shield
of the Saracen.

They both lose
their helmets.

Oliver is astonish-
ed at the appear-
ance of Fierabras,
and prays for his
conversion.

¹ col. 2.

² D vj.

enhaunced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere:
 "Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wylt
 fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd
 olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4
 ranne vpon hym: and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon
 his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in
 pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he
 cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8
 put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in
 thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his
 swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.
 ¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þ^e stroke come threwe 12
 hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred,
 and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al
 troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge
 oute of the swerdes and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16
 and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere:
 "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde
 of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that
 anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20
 comen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd: "Ihesus is wel
 myghty ¹for to shewe hys puyssaunce. But anone thou
 shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not
 mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalt be 24
 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon
 came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton
 on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al
 that the swerde araught it share and passed thorough, & 28
 thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god
 that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal
 charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer
 ansuerd: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32
 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede
 or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I
 haue alwaye desyred!" And therupon eche smote

¹ col. 2.

Fierabras smites
Oliver on his
shield,
and breaks it in
pieces.

Oliver cuts the
Saracen on his
shield,

and nearly stuns
him.

They abuse each
other. (701)

Fierabras wounds
Oliver (732) and

declares his time
has now come.

- other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe
 swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote
 olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came
 4 to the flesh, and yf god had not wrought he had be
 slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged
 came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe
 hys shelde so that he was al dyscouerē vnder the arme
 8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse
 & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote ¹fyerabras
 in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse
 that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel
 12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled
 of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche
 manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his
 bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his
 16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe
 foughten.

Oliver aims a
 blow at Fierabras;
 who, raising his
 shield too high,
 leaves his side
 uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his
 sword in between
 the ribs,

so that the Sara-
 cen's bowels al-
 most fall out. (748)

- ¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-
 leued' in god', and' how he was borne by
 20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'
 of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

- After that the Paynym was smyton and hurte
 mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he
 24 **A**myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the
 vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he
 had knowleche of the errour of the paynyms and lyfte
 vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy
 28 trynity and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after
 loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer
 & valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou
 byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy
 32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed &
 yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding
 himself vanquish-
 ed begs for mercy,

(753) promising
 to become a
 christian,

and to be bap-
 tised, (755)

¹ D vj, back.

² col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal byleue in
the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche
ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.
And I swere to the that yf by thy defeaute I dye sarasyn 4
I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou
take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.
Thou shalt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in
the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8
moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore
wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a
tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche
wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12
paynym prayed hym that it myght plesse hym to bere
hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan
Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was
not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16
hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and
redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me
to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,
for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20
theron and come as nyghe to me as thou may and yf I
may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst
lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now
hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and 24
depresshe the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in
the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand
men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them
that none shold moeue tyl I were returned fro the 28
bataylle." Whan Olyder vnderstood hym he was al
afrayed and abashed for fere, but not wythstondyng
he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesse you I am
contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32
& went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And
sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the
subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

- bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of
 nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym
 maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand
 4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote
 the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy
 that he myzt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to
 hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.
 And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon¹dydyer,
 Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard
 of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy,
 12 Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And
 semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not.
 Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore
 thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors
 16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge
 the other, For it semed as it had be thonder and
 tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a
 grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle
 20 enuenyed wyth the blood of a crapauld and was
 ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al
 amoewed and abashed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys
 manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may
 24 no ferther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously
 sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes
 be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may
 attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte."
 Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: "O
 noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd
 me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be
 32 reputed noblesse determyned whan ³I am youres and
 ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I
 am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn
 marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

The Saracens
break out of the
ambush. (812)

Oliver spurs his
horse, but in vain.

Roland and others
rush out to his
help.

Oliver being hard
pressed,
tells Fierabras he
must set him on
the ground.

Fierabras begs
him not to leave
him.

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. veyz.

³ D vij, back.

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed to the that I shal be baptyse^d. Yf thou leue me thou oughtest lytel to be preysed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4 erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste 8

Oliver promises not to desert him,

and arms himself in Fierabras armour. (808)

therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the sarasyn and wyth suche as he myzt haue he armed hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawn named 12

herupon came anone brullant wyth his faus darte & atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke so that the dart brake. thezne said fyerabras: "Syr 16 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte. late me descende doun and laye me a-parte out of the waye to thende that I be not defoulled of these sarasyns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20

Brullant charges at and wounds him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras down (825), and tries to escape, but seeing it is in vain, utters a prayer,

1grete compassyon & layed Fyerabras in the shadowe of a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24 knowest myn entencyon. I requyre the to gyue me grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme that for thexaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Roland my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28

draws his sword, and turns to meet the Saracens. (833)

haulteclere and came in to the waye, & the first that he recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefte hym to the breste and [he] fyl doun dede. & Olyuer was abyll 32 & delyuer, and took fro hym hys shelde whyche was al newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys, & also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne cmonge

the myscreautes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornynge¹
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys
 to-gydre: "by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou
 8 shalt not escape vs; kepe the wel¹ for by vs thou shalt
 deye!" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarsyns smote on
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of² shotte
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he
 16 had gotten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle
 hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome
 he raught fyl doun and was slayn. It is not redde in
 ony booke that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

He slays Clorgys,
 and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain
 under him. (891)

He defends him-
 self bravely.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteous-
 ly, & myght not be socoured' by the
 Frensshe men: ca. xvj³

24 O Lyuer was a[l]lone on fote emonge the sarasyns
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-
 uayllous: but it is not a thyng possyble that he
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with
 28 swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in 'moore than xxx
 places: & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyth
 foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in
 32 his body meruailously. Wherefore by veray force &
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

His shield is
 broken, (896);
 his coat of mail
 cut to pieces.

He is overpow-
 ered, bound, &
 blindfolded. (906).

¹ D viij. ² Ed. and. ³ Ed. xvij. ⁴ col. 2.
 CHARL. ROM. III. G

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wȝst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comferte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hys voys by a compas- 8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng¹ of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembreth not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe. am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes makyn^g the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes¹ straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amancdys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned¹ brullant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empesshed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr weye, but the other paynyms that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moyen peple & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

¹ D viij, back.

He cries on
Charles for help,
(912)

and on Roland.
(913)

Maradas mocks
him. (914)

Roland and the
other douzperes
charge the Sara-
cens: (932)

each kills a Sara-
cen. (945)

Guylam, Gual-
tier, and others
are slain (968).
and

- dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode awaye wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus
 4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed: "saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knyghtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede awaye the barons ¹neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the
 8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente down of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde, durandall drawen for tauenge hym fyersly,
 12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
 16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude of the paynyns he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
 20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
 24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng¹ alwaye at theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng¹ Charles wyst not what he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynyns
 28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And therefore by force they must leue the felde in ryzt grete ²dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they returned.
- The second' partye of the second' book con-
 32 teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geofrey taken prisoners. (978)

The French try to rescue them. (982)

Roland in the front.

They chase them for more than five miles,

till night came on, (1018)

when they were compelled to turn back. (1020)

¹ col. 2.

² E j.

¶ How Fyerabras was founzen by Charles,
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his
wonde : ca. primo

On his way back
to the camp
Charles finds
Fierabras lying
under a tree.
(1037)
He reproaches
him.

After that charles knew that he myght not haue 4
ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was
theñne to them greuous ; & also in retornynge they
fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshynge, to whom þe 8
kyng said : O vnhappy paynym, I ouzt wel to hate the
for by the been my men prysonners ande loste. thou hast
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16

Fierabras begs for
mercy, (1042)

In thonour of god I crye the mercy & pardone me.
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of
my woundes I shal enhaunce to my power the crysten
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten ; and by 24
my moyan the holy sepulcre & the holy reliques shal
be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete payne and
trauayle. And also I make an oth to you by god in
whom I now byleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28
Olyuer that noble knyght whiche is taken prysonner
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be
borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons. and whan they

promises to be-
come Christian,
(1046)

and to give up the
holy relics. (1056)

Charles has pity
on him and causes
him to be carried
to the camp.
(1067)

- saw hym so hugely membred^t they al were abashed of
 his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed^t he
 was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And
 4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour ¹to
 Olyuer that had foughten & ouercomen suche a man ;
 and as he was vnclothed^t partye of hys woundes opened^t
 and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl down
 8 a-swoune, & rolland^t anone lyfte hym vp. And in al
 haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]che-
 bysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous
 of this that the paynym shold^t be crystend^t. & after that
 12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another
 name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued^t he
 was called^t Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a
 bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes
 16 he was a saynt and god shewed^t for hym myracles, and
 is now called^t Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne
 anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes
 & surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and
 20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed
 ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer
 hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng.
 In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was
 24 present & sayd^t to fyerabras : “ yf now olyuer & the
 other barons were here present tofore the we shold^t wel
 be contente.” And charles was thenne al pencyf and
 heuy moche thynkyng^t vpon hys ba²rons prysoners, but
 28 he maad^t no more semblaunte.

All the French
 admire his size
 and figure. (1076)

He is baptised
 and named
 Floren. (1087)

After his death he
 became a Saint.

Charles orders his
 own physicians
 to attend to him.
 (1092)

They assure him
 that Fierabras
 will be well in
 2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyuer & his felowes were presented'
 to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned
 in pryson : capitulo ij

- 32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce
 tofore named for prysoners they taryed^t not but
 ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named^t

The Saracens
 carry Oliver
 and the other
 prisoners to
 Aigremore. (1114)

¹ E j, back.

² col. 2.

Balan enquires
what tidings they
bring. (1124)

Brillant tells
him of their
defeat. (1129)

and of Oliver's
victory over
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments
over his son,
(1134)

and threatens to
smash his gods.

Agrymore; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they
sowned and blewe vp trumpes makyn^g grete bruyt.
whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them
he came vnto them & fonde there brillant of mommyer, 4
to whome he sayd: "O brillant my frende, telle to vs of
your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and
affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so
moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they 8
dyscomfyted?" Brillant sayd to hym: "O syr admyral,
the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse,
and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng
we haue been almoost defeated and dyscomfyted. For 12
of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras
your sone is with hym vaynquysshed by one of his
barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vayn-
quysshed & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doying 16
ony treson." ¹whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to
therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys
mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had
of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an 20
hye voys: "O dolaunt vnhappy that I am! ha! poure
caytyf! what shal bycome of me? O Fyerabras, my
ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone?
Fro whens cometh thys trespaas? wherfore were thou 24
taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had re-
proche? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me
of the! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth: I
had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to 28
deth:" & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the
grounde and cryed: "O brillant of mommyere, what is
betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe
bruchart? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and captain 32
of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute
the brayne of Mahomet the god which hath promysed
to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self
and yolden." Thus sayeng alle in a rage he tormented

¹ E ij.

- hym self greuously vpon the grounde.¹ And whan
 thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-
 maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyzt that hath
 4 vaynquys²shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd:
 "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde
 knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel
 formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen
 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye
 you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be
 dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that
 he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr
 12 comforte, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche
 vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them
 sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not
 what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe
 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myzt know that we be of
 the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,
 for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal
 deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as
 20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frensshe mer-
 prysonners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he
 counceyllled them. after that thadmyral had comanded
 them to come tofore hym the paynyns vnarmed them
 24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,
 wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt:
 & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "pou
 frenssh man, beware that pou³lye not but say to me the
 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer
 ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto
 a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in loraune &
 cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,
 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:
 & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure
 knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprysed payne to
 serue our kyng, by cause pat by our seruyce we myzt
 be auanced & haue somme good guerdon & rewardes."

Balan enquires
 which of the
 French knights
 overcame Fiera-
 bras. (1144)

Brullant points
 out Oliver. (1146)

Oliver warns his
 companions not
 to tell their
 names. (1155)

Balan demands
 Oliver's name.
 (1166)

Oliver answers,
 "Eugynes, the
 son of a poor
 yeoman," (1168)

and says that all
 his companions
 are poor knights.
 (1171)

¹ Ed. grounde.

² col. 2.

³ E ij, back.

Balan is vexed at this, (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Brulliant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1184)

“O Mahoun,” sayð thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayð to hym anone: “deposshe the, take these frenashe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartes wel sharked wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” thenne aroos brullant & sayð: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seygnorye ne your lor^{des} be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wolde yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenash men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayð thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folylly for to come it to hys kepyng.

28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

After that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

- greuous pry.¹son brutamont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale down in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde that no lyzt myght be seen : in the which were put & nourysshed serpentcs, crapauldes, and other beestes venomous and detestable ; in whyche place al stenche was comprysed. and there passed a streme of the salte 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld them & sñet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe 12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessyte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes 20 opened : for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl down a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned 24 seeynge that the water grewe alwaye. ²ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myzt not helpe hym. & whan 28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled & sayd : “o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune ! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye ? knowe ye where I am ? thynke ye what I make ? 32 knowe ye my sorowe ? ye shal neuer see me.” this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym : “Syr oliuer, wayle nomore : vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

¹ E iij.

² col. 2.

and wishes he had
his sword,
and could get at
the Saracens.

Floripas hears
their cries and
groans. (1202)

She is young and
well made :
with lips like a
rose in May :

her eyes like a
falcon's :

her mouth small :

her shoulders
straight, and her
breasts like two
apples.

So fair is she that
a sight of her
would satisfy a
man who had
fasted 3 or 4 days.

Her mantle was
made by a fairy
at Colchos.

not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self &
traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we
that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good
swerde in his hande onely : for I make a vowe to god 4
that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshied
I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe
men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd in
suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the systre 8
of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had
grete compassyon of þe complayntes that Olyuer made.
this douzter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed
of body ; resonable of lengthe, ¹whyte & rody as rose in 12
maye. hyr heyre was shynnyng as the fyne golde, & hir
vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe : and hyr chere
lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng
lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16
her nose strait whiche was wel semely ; the ij browes
whiche were aboue the eyen apperyng made shadowe ;
hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel
tyssued with reed ; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20
roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne
al wel proporcyoned to the remenaunte of the hede :
with litel sholdres strait & egalle : & tofore aboue the
gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facyon of ij 24
apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel mon-
tayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple
meruayllously ryche fylled & pouldred with sterres of
fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrre, & it 28
was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght
neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes
was so fayre wyth hyr abylluments that yf a persone
had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32
see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer
she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos
of a woman of the fay²rye (there as Iason gate the

¹ E iij, back.

² col. 2.

- these of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye
 almost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte
 4 of this damoysele eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe
 men in pryson & in especyal of Olyuer of whome she
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle
 where as the paynyms were moche desolate for fyerabras
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche
 were deed. & whan the daughter had demaunded
 12 tydynges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was
 taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thezenn was al the
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for brutamont
 & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame,"
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a
 nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyerabras
 your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete
 24 valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer
 was knowen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd
 in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had enuye
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke
 28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd:
 "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them
 by cause of the fylthe and dyshoneste of the place: it
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your
 fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes
 by a woman I have knowen somme shame & deceyued."

Floripas enters
her father's hall,

and is told of her
brother's capture.

She asks Brutamont who the
prisoners are.
(1218)
He tells her. (1219)

Floripas wishes to
see and speak with
them, (1226)

but Brutamont
refuses to open
the door. (1228)

Floripas is en-
raged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on
the head and kills
him, (1251)
and throws him
into the dungeon.
(1257)

Floripas opens
the door,

and asks the
prisoners who
they are. (1266)

Oliver answers
her. (1268)

Floripas offers to
release them if
they will promise
to do what she
wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises.
(1284)

whan floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro
hyr self and sayd to hym : " O euyl glouton despytous,
oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse
the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4
hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she
made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont
gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seyng the porter wyth-
stonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage pat 8
she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl
down & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout
knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the
frensshe¹ men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12
abasshed whan they herd hym, wenyng to them that it
had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyued
them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche &
dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16
to see the prysonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd
to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how
ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer
ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20
men of charlemayns, & haue ben brougt hyther to thad-
myral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel
prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to
be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24
curtoys florypes, not-withstondyng pat she was not
crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon
and said to them : " I promyse you that I shal put you
out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28
shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer
ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye
shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, &
faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32
shal be. & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as
longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so pat we be
furnysshed of armes & been² aboue for to meddle wyth

¹ col. 2.

² E iij, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be styлле than folysshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoysel, I shal

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly 8 empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the lye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

Floripas compliments Gerard. (1302)

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage irsomme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillain

20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

¹¶ How the frensshe men were put oute² of pryson and were vysyted' by the noble mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iiiij

28 **W**Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners she called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it doun. And whan the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo 32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after.

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusalem.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir. (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window. (1369)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4 About the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lykenesse by meruayllous facyon: & after somme scriptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters ¹was a gardyn ¹²pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel ²⁰these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- ²⁴bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god ²⁸mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned hyr Ire ayenst ³²hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet whyche cam to ²hyr prestly and threwe

¹ E v.

² col. 2.

- the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tombled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr:
- 4 ¶ “Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred ne in daunger by the.” and herof the barons made grete Ioye; The French knights are delighted. (1374)
- 8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayd to hym: “Syr Olyuer, ne doubte ye not for Floripas sees the blood from Oliver's wound, (1380)
- 12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe:” & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: & anone as oliuer had vsee it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre and heals him with a draught. (1380)
- 16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyed of al good vytaylle and delycyous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after The knights are supplied with food, baths, and clothes. (1395)
- 20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at theyr ease; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of¹ sylke & golde broudred. & thenne
- 24 Floripes sayd: “lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were
- 28 knowen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abashed: ye knowe Floripas reminds them of what she has done for them. (1396)
- 32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you.” and after the sayd Florypes sayd: “lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce² whome I haue longe tyme loued: he is named guy of Floripas tells them she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (1411)

¹ E v, back.² Ed. frannee.

whom she had
seen first at Rome
with Lucifer,
(1414) and over-
came him.

For his sake she is
willing to become
a Christian. (1423)

Gerard says they
will do anything
if she will give
them arms.

Floripas gives
them a damsel
a-piece.

All this was very
noble of Floripas,
but shows the
natural curiosity
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme whan I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admyral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynmys & the sayd guy of bourgoyne Iusteden togyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue ¹hym not to husbond I shal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frensshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken ²oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

¹ col. 2.

² E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the
 fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for
 the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of theyr
 enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the
 fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of
 god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore
 8 they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that
 was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome she had in
 loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in
 god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-
 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue
 in thys damoyssel was fixet and comprysed of longe
 affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the pry-
 soners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knyghts
 had to thank her
 love for Guy for
 their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad-
 myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche
 wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myzt not
 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he
 had for ¹his sone, whan he myght no lenger
 endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym :
 "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !
 24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone,
 for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe ? yf I haue
 none other tydynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-
 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo
 28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued
 and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,
 & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : "Fayre neuewe
 rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant
 thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the

Reyner is in great
 grief for his son,
 (1428)

and says he must
 go and find him.
 (1431)

Charles tells
 Roland that he
 must go to Balan,
 the next morning,

¹ e vj, col. 2.

and demand from
him the relics and
the release of his
prisoners. (1436)

Roland remon-
strates,

as also does
Naymes. (1446)

Charles says
Naymes shall go
too. (1452)

Basyn protests,
and Charles orders
him to go also,
(1458)
and likewise
Terry. (1472)

Ogyer, (1480)

Richard of Nor-
mandy, (1480)

and Guy of Bur-
gundy. (1488)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for
which I haue taken grete payne : And after aske of
hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf
he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4
drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the necke,
his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol-
land answerd : " Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy
on me ! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8
neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche
sayd : " syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland
is your neuewe ; ye knowe of what valewe he is of. yf
he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." " And I 12
assure you," sayd Charles, " that ye shal goo wyth hym,
and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys
sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym :
" & how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes ? I am 16
certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal
not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his
heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and
so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20
lyke to thother ; therefore he was ordeyned to goo also.
Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo ;
and therefore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.
Rychard of Normandy came to the emperour and 24
sayd : " Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo
pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllingly ye wyl make
them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue
lost them." " by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28
charles, " ye shal goo wyth the other ; and thenne shal
ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral
whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy
of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym : " come to me : ye are my 32
cosyn, and of my next parentage ; ye shall be the seuenth
for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. ² And
ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

¹ e vj, back.

² e vj, back, col. 2.

that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys
 cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome
 I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he
 4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,
 and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of
 bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now
 wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer
 8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper.

*Guy begs off,
 but in vain.*

And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen
 barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes
 said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in
 12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement.
 We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for
 to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in
 al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne
 16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In
 thonour of god that it be pardonned to vs." with these
 wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to
 wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons:
 20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I
 commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon
 and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."

*In the morning
 the messengers
 appear before
 Charles, (1499)*

*who commends
 them to God,*

And so they departed on theyr waye hastely, transport-
 24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

*and so they
 depart. (1503)*

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns
 to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,
 which were recountred' by the peres of
 28 fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

IN aygremore was theen ballant thadmyral, al
 sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara-
 ssyns for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys
 32 commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce
 of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, Maradas asks

*Balan calls a
 council. (1512)*

why they have
been called to-
gether. (1516)

Balan tells them
that they must go
the next morning
to Mormyonde,
(1522)

and demand from
Charles the sur-
render of Fiera-
bras, and homage
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-
tests, but says
they will go.
(1538)

They arm them-
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherefore hast thou sente for vs?" ballant answerd and
sayd: "lordes, I shal say to you þ^e trowth. Charle-
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4
londes of hym. but thys shal not be; and he is a moche
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I
counceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde ¹hym,
olde dotard, that he byleue in mahoun our god wyth- 12
oute delaye; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons: and 16
yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym
wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by
aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte
of his heed wythout ony mercy:" whan thadmyral had 20
sayd, Maradas answerd: "Syr admyrall, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24
membred. but byleue ye not that I say thys for coward-
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I
wyl accomplysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28
put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I
haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel
as Maradas; wherefore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32
wente to horse-backe, wel arme², & grete speres in theyr
hondes, with penouns ²reyssed puyssauntly, and Iour-
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

¹ e vij, col. 2.

² e vij, back.

- passed the brydge of mantryble; & assone as they myght,
 they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named
 came and recountred those sarasyns. And fyrst, duc
 4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes: "O lord
 god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made!
 See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete
 puyssaunce? aduise we vs what is best to doo." Rolland
 8 sayd: "my lordes, ne doubtte ye noo thyng. Beholde,
 and see them; they be not passyng^{xx} or ^{xxx}; late vs
 ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,
 and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partye of
 12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed,
 whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men: "how be
 ye so Infortunat and cursyd to come and mete wyth vs,
 and ye be cristen?" Duke Naymes ansuerd: "what
 16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynnously and ouer
 folysshly: we be men longyng to þ^e redoubted emperour
 Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant
 thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym: "ye be in daunger:
 20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse?" Naymes
 ansuerd: "we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu
 our maker." maradas said: "which¹ of you dare Iuste
 ayenst me?" "I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas
 24 sayd: "thou art moche presumptuous; For yf I had
 suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde² them al wyth
 my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout
 gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felowes:
 28 "herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you
 moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after
 I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland
 had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after
 32 sayd to Maradas: "thou hast folyly spoken and thought
 thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou
 shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I
 deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

After they had
 passed Mantrible
 Naymes sees them
 coming, (1555)
 and is frightened.

Roland advices
 them to fight.
 (1568)

Maradas chal-
 lenges them, (1568)

and asks if any of
 them will fight
 him. (1576)

Naymes offers to
 do so, (1577)
 but Maradas
 mocks at him,
 and says he is too
 old. (1579)

Roland is enraged
 at this,

¹ e vij, back, co'. 2.

² Orig. confonnde.

charges at him,
(1589)

and cuts him
down with
Durandal. (1605)

The other Saracens
try to avenge
his death,

but are all slain
save one, (1624)

who escaped and
carried the news
to Balan. (1637)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recountred
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þ^e stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4
swerdes they smote the helmes rychely wrought.
Rolland was so furyous, that he¹ helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and
departed it; & after by grete force recouerd hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and clefted it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma²radas fyl doun to therthe. whan the
other sawe kyng Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
haue borne awaye hys heed, they looked eche on other as 12
al abashed, and concluded to take vengeance on the
frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer meruaylously.
And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the
paynymys were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kyng, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ranne
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32
thadmyral vnder³stode thys, he was almoost dede for
sorowe of the deth of hys kynges aforesayd.

¹ *Orig.* he he.

² e viij.

³ e viij, col. 2

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble;
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge:
 capitulo vij

8 **W**Han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth
 the sarasyns, they were al trauaylled and wery,
 and wente and rested them in a medowe al
 grene and ful of swete floures: and after sayd the duc
 naymes: "my lordes, I counceyلة you that we retorne
 to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon; & I wote
 12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe
 how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd
 and sayd: "How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retorning?
 Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-
 myral, how someuer it be. and late vs do one thyng
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one
 20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."
 Naymes sayd to hym: "syr 'rolland, it semeth that
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be
 anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-
 24 yon of Rolland; and so eche of them toke an hede, and
 rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrst
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche
 was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes:
 28 "lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is
 Aygreimore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogier
 the danoys sayd: "vs byhoueth fyrst to passe by thys
 brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx
 32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been
 soulded wyth leed and cyment, & with grete barres of
 yron: vpon² whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes to return, (1658)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1662)

to which they all agree.

Ogier describes the bridge of Mantribe. (1678)

¹ e viij, back.

² *Orig.* wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knyghtes can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafre by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete chaynes of yron. And aboute on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshauente and shynynge lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named fla'got, whyche is bynethe the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galey 12 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terribble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you : care 20 not for passynge ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Duc naymes of bauyere reprysed hym : "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28 receyue therfore fyftene : late me do ; For by the playsyr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth oute daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the 32 brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes & other glayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

¹ e viij, back, col. 2.

² f j.

- duc naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after
- 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes answered: "I shal say you the trouthe. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath
- 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuertheles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that
- 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of
- 16 the brydge tofore al thyng." Duc Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes,
- 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C fawcons me'wed, an C palfroyes in good poynte & rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must haue ii[ij] sommyers charged
- 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other excusacyon." duc Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstondyng
- 28 that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had deuysed: & answered to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter,
- 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge cometh after vs, and harnoys more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galafre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons, 100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

Galafre believes
him and lets them
pass. (1755)

Roland meets a
Saracen,

and throws him
over into the
river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes
him.

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes,
and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other
Jewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle
playse your wyllie." ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4
said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge
doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland,
which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe,
syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8
we passe thys brydge." and rolland came ¹ behynde alle
the other; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the
brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd
in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12
thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng
happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his
felowes, he lyghted doun from hys hors, and toke thylke
turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16
ryuer. ¶ Duc Naymes loket behynde hym, and sawe
the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord
god of heuen, I trowe the deuyll is in the body of Roul-
land! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god 20
helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and
vylaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage
that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to
gouerne² hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24
enemye where he myzt fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the
Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr
message: capitulo viii 28

The French
knights enter into
Aigremore. (1768)

THE barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the
brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as
ballant was, they entred in to the towne in ³ good
ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32
noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

¹ f j, back. ² *Orig.* gruerne. ³ f j, back, col. 2.

be shold^d fynysse hys message. And the duc ansuerd that he so do wold^d gladly, and^d sayd^d in thys manere :

Naymes delivers the message, demanding the sacred relics, (1808)

and the release of the prisoners. (1810)

Balan in a rage

bids him stand aside, (1826)

swearing that he will have him put to death.

Richard of Normandy delivers the message (1846) to the same effect.

Balan recognizes and curses him, (1860)

and bids him stand aside with Naymes.

“The grete noble kyngⁱ of Fraunce commaundeth the that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4 blessyd^d Ihesu Cryste was crowned^d wyth, and the other relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and payne; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in pryson folysshly. and^d yf thou do not as I haue to the 8 deuyse^d, Charles shal make the ¹to be hanged^d by the necke on a gybet and^d strangled vylaynously.” Thadmyral ballant, replenysshed^d of an entencion moche outrageous, sayd^d to Naymes the duc: “Thou hast 12 gretely defouled^d me by outrage, and I haue wylyngly herde the. Goo forth and^d sytte down by yonde pyler, & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde. Mahomet my god^d, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16 gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see thy hede flee fro thy sholdres.” The duc Naymes ansuerd: “yf it playse god^d my maker, & his blessyd moder, pou shalt haue made a lesyng.” After hym 20 spake Rychar^d duc of Normandy, & said: “vnderstonde me, syr admyral! Charles the kyng, with his berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puyssaunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes, whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þ^e, & shal neuer haue mercy on the.” Thadmyral ballant supposed^d to haue knowen hym, & sayd^d thus: “mahomet, in whom I byleue, curse the! thou resemblest wel Rychar^d of 32 normandy, whych slewe my ²vncle corsuble. Now wold^d Mahoun the god^d that he were here! he shold^d neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and^d sytte down

¹ f ij, col. 2.² f ij, back.

by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr
 thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore After him Basyn
 repeats the mes-
 sage, (1864)
 ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,
 4 aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth
 the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been
 requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle
 the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went
 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc
 of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyre & countenance
 of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-
 garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed and after him
 Terry of Ardane,
 (1874)
 12 that he had ben a deuyll. And after, thyerry sayd: at whose appear-
 ance Balan is
 frightened. (1888)
 "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.
 Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth
 the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou
 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys
 barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou
 sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the
 vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-
 20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what
 man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe is
 he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preysed &
 vaunted?" Therne the duc Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle
 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &
 hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that
 yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone
 he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on
 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an
 olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent
 tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &
 after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth
 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.
 yf I were now in thy wyll and subgectyon, as thou
 arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth
 me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely, (1806)

Balan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

I shold^d doo hange the by the necke, and^d strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vassal," sayd^d the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd^d grete folye. For by Mahommet my god^d, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4 the, as thou hast sayd^d of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good Ogier the danoys tofore hym, and^d sayd^d: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche¹ wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and^d yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and^d doo the deye shamefully." 12 Thadmyral, beyng^e al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland^d the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doynge^t to hym ony reuerence, and^d sayd^d to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng^t and^d Emperour redoubt^d, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god^d Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world^d, & in the glorious vyrgyn marie his moder; and^d 20 do the to be baptyse^d, and^d thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and^d atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred^d and^d delyuerd hole and^d in good^d poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged^d as a theef." Thadmyral sayd to hym: "thou hast rebuked^d and^d blamed^d me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged^d & strangled^d." Thenne Roulland^d answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, 2 For I doubte the 32 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned^d." ¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and^d sayd to hym in thys manere: "Charles

¹ f iij.

² f iij, col. 2.

- commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and repeats the message,
 and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons; and
 thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man: and yf thou wylt
 4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu
 Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute ende and wythoute
 begynnyng. And yf thou byleuest my counceyl, thou
 mayst be in his grace. And lo! what thou shalt do: take advising Balan to go humbly to Charles
 8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo
 in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors,
 and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles,
 and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to and beg for mercy. (1940)
 12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errours and outrages.
 ¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty;
 and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the
 be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully¹ to dye.”
 16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged Balan is greatly enraged,
 than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de
 Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the
 other that were of hys² counceyl, and demaunded theyr and holds a council to consider what is to be done with the messengers. (1956)
 20 aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd.
 Anone sortybrant sayd to hym: “Syr admyral, I
 counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and
 slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe
 24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is
 pensyf: yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.
 ¶ After ye shal descende in to fraunce, & doo you be
 crowned there as kyng.” “by mahoun,” sayd ballant,
 28 “ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuys: to which Balan agrees.
 goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr
 felowes, for to do after the enterpryse.” And thus as I
 haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencion to make of the
 32 freysshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the
 freysshe men were saued', and' lodged' to-

¹ *Orig.* shamefluy.

² f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears
and asks her
father who the
French knights
are. (1977)

Floripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly
herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4
chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded
of hym : "What been these knyghtes sette there
a'parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd : "my doughter, they
be borne in fraunce : the whyche haue sayd to me 8
wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue
blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle
you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought
to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd : "I shal say 12
to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do
smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserved it.
And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre
without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, 16
"ye haue ryght wel sayd : ryght soo shal it be doon.
Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other."
"good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne,
and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20
tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none
other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to
the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the
frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysonners. 24

and asks for them
to be given into
her charge. (2000)

¶ And after sayd to hyr fader : "gyue to me these
Frensshe men ! I shal make theym wel to be kepte ;
and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse
tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28
¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was
contente thyt hys doughter shold haue them in kepynge.
Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of
wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant : "Syr 32
Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys
fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

Sortibrant warns
Balan that women
are not to be
trusted. (2013)

¹ f iij, back, col. 2.

² f iijj.

- mutablyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and
also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued
by wymmen." Moche angry & euy content was floripes
4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray- Floripas in a rage
threatens Sorti-
brant. (2016)
tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne
me to ouermoeche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a
buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down
8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was
euy contente of thys debate. And therupon she took She conducts the
French knights to
her chamber.
(2024)
the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-
oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr
12 naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of
eternal glorye, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer
lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with Naymes is struck
with the beauty
of Floripas.
the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in
16 loue." Rolland was euy contente and sayd to Naymes:
"What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maad you to
speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of
suche thyngs." ¹Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-
20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the
douzter sayd to them that they were not assembled to
plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they
were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette
24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and
enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and
tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the
other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my Roland and Oliver
embrace each
other. (2030)
28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe
you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche de-
maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and
of theyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thynke that
32 they were gladde eche of other that they were al
togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes
the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crysten-
dom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrecyon the

¹ f iiij, col. 2.

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynymys, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyohe fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

¶ But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wyll of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente ¹to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyeue hyr enterpryse and dstermynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that she myzt haue tydynges certeyn of guy of bourgoynes, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuoire you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuynge." she was contente, & they were contente, and promysed fydeyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to duc naymes for to knowe what 24

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires. (2039)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2048) he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the dougter, "your kyng¹ is 28 sory for you." After she came to Rycharde and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, ²I am Rycharde of Normandye." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the¹ thou puttest to 32 deth on a tyme corsuble myn vncl. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

and after Rolland's.

¹ f iij, back.

² f iij, back, col. 2.

name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to duc Myllon, & am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. (2064)

Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneled down
4 to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After,
the doughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed
to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe
that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the
8 world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I
wold gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayd: "I swere to
you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that
there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot
12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I
may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym
is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr
guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and
16 receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd:
"god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she
were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan
Florypes vnderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour,
20 and sware [by] mahomet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed
it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke
on a gybette. Rolland exhorted Guye that he shold
do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduanced hym, & hath
24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayd: "the sone of god of
crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore
myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn
hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst,
28 & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, she approched to
hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and
she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys
chekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne
32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste
and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr
cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the
relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge

Floripas tells the
knights how she
has long loved
Guy of Burgundy.
(2072)

Roland calls on
Guy to come for-
ward and accept
her as his wife

(2095), but Guy
refuses. (2096)

Floripas swears
that if he does not
she will have
them all hanged.
(2102)

Guy gives way.
(2104)

Floripas kisses
him, (2112)

and after pro-
duces the sacred
relics, (2114)

the crown and
the nails,

whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu
cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For
Loye they alle wepte ¹moche tenderly, and one after the
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they
had ben tofore.

which the French
knights devoutly
kiss. (2182)

¶ How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyo-
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12
was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires
of Balan if it is
true that Fiera-
bras is a prisoner.
(2147)

BAllant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & syttyng
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a specyal 16
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admyral, is it
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?"

Balan says it is.
(2152)

Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28
ben comen as messagers ²fro the sayd charles, which
haue vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

but that he has
twelve French
knights prisoners,
in charge of
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is
wrong to trust
them to a woman,
(2166)

¹ f v, col. 2.

² f v, back.

lytel thyng ben chaunged^d and tordned fro theyr thougt.
 neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and^d by
 your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and^d shal knowe
 4 what they be, and^d of what condycion." "Goo forth,"
 said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my
 doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche
 proude and^d replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to
 8 the chambre where the douzter was and^d the frensshe
 men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but
 lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly
 wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto
 12 the grounde. Whan Florypes saw that she was al
 abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble
 knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that
 is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husbond
 16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye
 wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,
 For I complayne me wythoute makyng^t ouermochte euyl
 semblaunte." to whome Rolland an^swerd: "doubte
 20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal
 knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you
 that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he
 shal for the brekyng^t herof." Hereupon Lucafer entre^d
 24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al
 armed^d wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And
 came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and^d
 bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by
 28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that
 almoost he had ouerthrowen hym, & after sayd to hym:
 "of whens art thou, veyllard^t? hyde it not fro me."
 The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,
 32 and that is my contree, and^d am specyal counceyllour of
 Charlemayne, And^d al these barons that ben here been al
 erles and^d grete lordes, and^d ben comen for to shewe to
 ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles,

and that he will
go see if they are
safe. (2188)

He goes to Flori-
pas' chamber,
and bursts open
the door with his
foot. (2189)

Floripas calls on
Roland to avenge
this insult. (2186)

Roland promises
to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,
(2197)

and first seizing
Naymes by the
beard, (2204)

demandes his
name, (2207)
whych Naymes
tells him, (2208)

redoubtē^d Emperour; & by cause that we haue not
spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners.
Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue
holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not
al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuerē^d: "I am
contente thy folye be pardonned the; but I demaunde
of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of
fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse
they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe,"
sayē^d the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that
wyl may goo playe where hym lystē. Somme ryde
oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the felde and
syngē, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, &
other playsaunte games. and in the morne euery man
gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is
sayē^d, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to
poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they
goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not
lyghtly vanquysshē^d. Suche been the peple in the
contreye of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and
sayē^d: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard
that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no
thyngē so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no
valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In
truth," said the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the
Paynym ansuerē^d: "I shal teche you the manere," and
he approchē^d to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre,
and in goyng^r Rolland made sygne to the duc that he
shold bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest
bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sharply that
the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after
said to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc
took the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the
paynym wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and
blewe the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame
and came

and asks him to
let him go. (2214)

Lucifer asks him
to describe the
French and their
games. (2216)

Naymes says
some hunt, (2221)

some play chess
or tables, (2224)

and that they are
all brave and hard
to conquer.

Lucifer asks him
if he knows the
game of the "grete
cole?" (2230)

Naymes says,
"No."

Lucifer takes a
coal and shows
him how to blow
it. (2236)

¹ f vj.

² f vj, col. 2.

- to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente
 al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was Naymes blows
 one so as to burn
 Lucifer's beard,
 (2248)
 almost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes
 4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke and then kills him
 with the brand.
 (2248)
 that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so
 grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the
 grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou
 8 arte, Whome I byseche god confounde, thou wendest to
 haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there
 wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth, Roland praises his
 play. (2253)
 syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd
 12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd
 duc Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys
 folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he
 truffed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto
 16 duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to
 be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more
 charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his
 ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote
 20 now ¹that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse
 me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader
 had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,
 but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn- and declares she
 would never have
 married Lucifer.
 24 ous deth."

- ¶ How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe
 men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys
 wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-
 28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the
 dou3ter: ca. xj

- F**loripes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that
 Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth
 32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes, Floripas reminds
 them that Lucifer
 knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

¹ f vj, back.

was Balan's
greatest friend,
and would surely
be missed,

and advises them
to arm them-
selves, (2270)

and suddenly
attack the Sara-
cens. (2275)

They arm, and
start out two and
two at night fall.
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-
suble, (2289)
and Oliver Cold-
roe. (2291)

The Saracens fly.
(2299)
Some jump out of
the windows.
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng¹. he abyde²th for hym to
come to dynere, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be
retorne^d. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon
ye shal be here encombre^d and assayle^d, and al the 4
golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal
be dede. Wherefore I counceyl you that ye doo arme
you and put you in poynte. take lyztly your helmes and
your sheldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8
doubte^d of other vnarmed. therfore I wyl not that ye
be close^d ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue
you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12
and thenne shal ye be wel lodged. Whan the dough-
ter had thus say^d, they were ryght wel contente, &
prestly armed them, and gyrde their swerdes aboute
them, And two & two yssue^d oute of the chambre, and 16
goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,
in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute
at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20
nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye
was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryzt fyersly for
to fyght. Roulland crye^d to hys felowes that eche
man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynims and sara- 24
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylle^d not.
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth
the Kynge Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28
appoynte^d anone was torne^d vp so down & caste to the
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and
sowne^d in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and
dysmembred: Other lepe out of the ²wyndowes, whyche 32
after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen,
sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

¹ f vj, back, col. 2.

² f vij.

- to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche
4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Cer- teyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente." Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them
8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle
12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawn hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of
16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you
20 scorne me nomore, I shal wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaute for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your wylle be doon; but the nyzt is ouer nyghe; by myn
24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dys- playsaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you
28 more, I haue loste alle my ioie. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I
32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come, Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawn at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by a window. (2311)

The French are masters of the castle, (2321)

but have no food. (2325)

Balan, who had fallen into a ditch, calls for help. (2330)

Sortibrant and others rescue him. (2335)

He swears vengeance.

Sortibrant advises him to wait for daylight. (2352)

Balan laments over Lucifer. (2355)

He is sure the
French knights
cannot hold out,
as they have no
provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles
send them any
help. (2367)

In the morning
the Saracens
assemble, (2369)

they cover four
square miles.

Balan engages
Marvin, "a moche
fals theef," to
steal the magic
girdle. (2367)

Marvin agrees.
(2367)

And after I shal make florypes the putayn to be brente
in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde
them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes.
And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4
socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde
the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo
socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other
parte, charles shal ¹haue noo tydynges of his barons ne 8
shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in
lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded
and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the
morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12
concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it
seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle.
Thenne come there so many paynyms in the contreye
aboute that theyr lodgysses helde foure myle of space. 16
ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were,
whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none
other conduyte ne comforte but to be wythin assyeged
in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20
as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre,
yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called
one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn
creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpyn, by the berde that 24
I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for
to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal
rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde & syluer,
& thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28
it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede
for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."
¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that ²as longe as it
shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold 32
neuer haue be famyned. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde
tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,
or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

¹ f vij, back.

² f vij, back, col. 2.

- shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght, At night he crosses
he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of the moat, (2403)
- 4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he climbs into the
mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the tower, (2406)
- 8 bolyke wordes he opened it ; and whan he was wythin, and comes to
he sawe that al þe barons were fast a-slepe, and he made Floripas' cham-
so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght ber. (2408)
- 12 pryuely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrde hym self He sends the
wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked, French knights to
whiche was moche fayre ; & was enclyned anone to haue sleep by enchant-
defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke, ment. (2411)
- 16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye moche strongly, He attempts to
and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherfore the ravish Floripas,
maydens came anone al abashed & aferde. & whan they (2428)
saw marpyn the thief as blacke ¹as a moore, the moost who cries for
hardyst of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bour help. (2431)
- 20 goyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth Guy hears her
hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that cries, (2441)
- 24 she shold not be aferde of ony thyng. And he came runs to her cham-
so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the thief had ber, (2442)
- 28 defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym, and cuts down
he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and Marvin with his
Guye of bourgoyne recountred hym, and gaf hym so sword. (2448)
- 32 grete a stroke that he cleft hym by the myddel, and He throws his
cutte a two the gyrdel, and the candel quenched. The body into the sea,
other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke, and the girdle is
& the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see, lost. (2464)
- 32 wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had
stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see,
there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a
Iewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be recounerd. Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god-'des
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised
at Marvin's not
returning. (2482)

W han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche
abashed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the thief is deed,
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you
that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tasseble your
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16
crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes
they doo caste stones & dartes enuenyed, but—blessyd
be god!—the freysshe men doubted them no thyng
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24

Sortybrant says he
is surely dead,
(2484)

and advises Balan
to order the
assault to begin.
(2485)

The French de-
fend themselves
well, (2492)

but their pro-
visions begin to
fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to
be felt, especially
by the women.
(2497)

Guy of Burgundy
proposes to his
fellows

And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche
dysplaysaunte for the necessitye of the freysshe men, of
hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes she
swowned & fyl to grounde ²as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys
felawes: "My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessitye
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32
only brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

¹ f viij, col. 2.

² f viij, back.

damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe
 that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.
 And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in
 4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold
 abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.
 Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme
 vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to
 8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-
 pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My
 lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power,
 whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I
 12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they
 had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that
 she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and
 sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs
 16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the
 power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and
 drynke, & that they do soo moche that the ¹puyssaunce
 of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al
 20 byleue on them wythout varyeng." The mayde sayd:
 "Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she
 had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the
 erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,
 24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.
 And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,
 and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many
 other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,
 28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and
 encence; and many other tresours were there assembled.
 Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete
 tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that
 32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled?
 Wold god that Rychard of normandye had now Iuppyn
 in hys cyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplysse
 wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyste. And that

to make a sortie
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that
if they would be-
lieve on Mahomet
they would haue
food enough.
(2528)

Roland asks to see
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads
them to the
shrine, (2535)

where were
Appolyn, and
Mahomet, Term-
agaunt, Margot, and
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-
sure.

Guy wishes they
had all that gold.
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn
 þ^e chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with
 the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette
 them in good poynte." Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4
 "Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynly ayenst the goddes; crye
 them mercy & adoure them, ¹to thende that they
 enclyne them to you to doo you comforte." guy sayd
 vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madama, for I 8
 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may
 not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And
 Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe,
 and were anone alle to-broken. Wherefore Roulland 12
 sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that
 ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been
 fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make
 semblaunte to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16
 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu
 Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Roulland, that ye say
 the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl
 that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20
 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn,
 of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you
 socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete
 vytalle for to satysfye our hungre." 24

Floripas rebukes
 him, (2559)
 and says they
 ought to worship
 her gods.

Guy says they are
 all asleep. (2564)

He smashes
 Jupiter, and
 Ogyer smashes
 Margot. (2567)

Floripas is con-
 verted, and begins
 to pray. (2576)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the
 toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which
 they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged'
 of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij 28

She faints with
 hunger. (2584)

² **W**Han Florypes had sayd, she fyl down to the
 erth a-swoune for sorowe & anguysshe.
 Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche sorou-
 fully for the loue of hyr. H[e]reupon Olyuer the 32
 courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes,

¹ g j.

² g j, col. 2.

- I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but
 4 that I shold fyght quykely wyth the paynymys ;" & semblably sayd rolland. Wherefore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, &
 8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other : " Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogier, it byhoueth that one of you¹ abyde for to kepe the place, that at the
 12 retornynge we may entre surely." ¶ The Duke Naymes coude take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus : " Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched,
 16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse : though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of ²synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte
 20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubte ye no thyng therof." Rolland ansuerd : " syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde." but it was not their playsyr
 24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche stietted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in
 28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral loking out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherfor hastily he sente for brullant and Sortybrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd :
 32 " my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherefore do sowne your hornes for tasseemble your peple ; ye tary ouer longe."

Oliver proposes a sortie, (2606)

to which all agree.

They sally out. (2615)

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogier to remain behind to guard the gate, (2618)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. (2620)

Thierry and Geoffrey agree to remain. (2631)

Balan sees them coming, (2638)

and bids Sortybrant assemble his men to resist them. (2645)

¹ orig. yon.

² g j, back.

The Saracens
attack them,

but in a little
while more than
100 are killed.
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's
nephew, comes
up with 15,000
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on
his companions.
(2670)

All the Saracens
are afraid of him.
(2679)

After the battle
the French
knights meet 20
pack-horses, laden
with provisions
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the
escort. (2708)

And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assaylled the frencshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. ¹For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed: gherard, Ogier & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycorye, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn so myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouzt to 28 be. & after that þe batayll was fynysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by ²the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Inconyntent the ledars of the sarasyns and of their vytayl

¹ g j, back, col. 2.

² g ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes &
 Wylyam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth.
 And Rolland and the other came & auoyded the place,
 4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but
 this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete
 payne.

and drive them
 inside the castle
 gates. (2704)

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the
 8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' de-
 maunded' of thadmyral, and the com-
 playntes that Florypes made for hym, &
 other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 A S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as
 they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the som-
 myers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of
 men of armes of the partye of kyng' Claryon, that it was
 16 merueylle. There was thenne an harde and stronge
 recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, &
 Aulbery hys 'sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye,
 Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn
 20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For
 the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of
 kyng' Claryon, he auauuced hym for to smyte hym. that
 came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn
 24 vnder hym of the paynyns, & sodeynly he was en-
 uyronned of moo than an hondred knyghtes sarasyns,
 whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, &
 after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and
 28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at
 his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he
 began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ "O Ihesus, veray
 god, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now,
 32 that am euyl fortunéd? O Ihesus, comforte me! O
 noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn

The Saracens
 press heavily on
 the French. (2706)

Basyn and Aubrey
 are slain, (2730)

and Guy taken
 prisoner, (2748)

and led away
 blindfolded. (2747)

He prays and
 cries for help.
 (2749)

¹ g ij, col. 2.

Clarion mocks
Guy. (2753)

The French are so
hard pressed that
they have to take
refuge in the
castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires
after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her
he is a prisoner.
(2788)

Floripas swoons.

and after declares
she will surrender
the castle if Guy
be not rescued
before two days.
(2792)

vnclē, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng¹ claryon
sayd to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyngē shal auayle
the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng¹. I shal delyuer
the al lyuyng¹ to the admyral of spayn thys day, And⁴
to-morne thou shalt be hanged." But now ye may
wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys
felowes, were euyl contentē whan they sawe the Erle
Guye soo prysonner. ¶ Neuertheles¹ they dyd grete 8
feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to
the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates
barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thenne floripes
cam anon to rolland, & said to hym: "syr rolland, I 12
requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of
bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye
departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.
Ye ought to bryngē hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16
Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland
ansuerd: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye
no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see
hym; the paynys haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20
knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer
yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth
alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland,
whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24
rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons
of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen & erthe, yf I
haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whome I ought to be
maryed, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28
passed. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to
hym, and for loue of hym be baptyssed and be crysten.
Alas! our loues haue sone faylled. This sorowe hath
made me² wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had 32
these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland
myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but
promysed hyr to make hyr glad wythin ij dayes, for

¹ g ij, back.

² g ij, back, col. 2.

thenne atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr
 playsyr, and that she shold no thyng doubte therof; Roland promises
 he will rescue
 him, (2804)
 "for knowe ye surely," sayd rolland, "I had leuer to
 4 be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal
 be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &
 madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may
 not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre
 8 dayes passed syth we ete, we haue purchaced vytayl for
 vs & these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late
 vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente
 to entretiens the lyf:" for ye ougt to knowe that they
 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by
 cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
 deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,
 the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and
 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng and lawdyng
 god deuoutelye.

and advises her to
 take some of the
 food which they
 had won. (2812)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,
 whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled,
 20 dyscoloured, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye
¹by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for þe
 dauager that he felte hym to be in the handes of his
 enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-
 24 poyled of his armes; & thenne appyered his body wel
 membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &
 who he was. the baron ansuerd: "Admyral, I fere not
 to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-
 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to
 rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel
 to be doubted." ballant ansuerd: "I knowe the wel
 ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my
 32 dougter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me
 gretely: & I know wel that she loueth the more than
 ony man lyuyng; & I for that loue haue lost many men
 of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Meanwhile Guy
 is led before
 Balan, (2820)

who demands his
 name. (2826)

Guy tells him.
 (2829)

Balan recognizes
 him as his daugh-
 ter's love,

and the cause of
 all his trouble.
 (2836)

Balan demands
the names of the
knights in the
castle. (2838)

Guy recounts
their names.

A Saracen gives
him a blow on the
mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him
with one hand,
and with the other
breaks his neck.
(2856)

The Saracens fall
on him and beat
him nearly to
death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreya. but yf al be yolden to me
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in short tyme, &
dysmembred. & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daunger-
ously." Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,
Olyuer, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, duc of 8
Ardayne, Rychard of Normandy, Gherard¹ of Mun-
dydyer, Naymes duc of bauyere, & basyn the genewey,
whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god & helpe
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12
myral was ryzt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;
Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour,
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not
holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre
wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þe necke behynde,
that he brake it, And; wythoute moeuyng of hande or
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral.
¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for
the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presence to-
fore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold
be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara- 28
syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admyral had
not commaunded them that he shold not be put to 32
deth in suche manere.

¹ g iij, col. 2.

² g iij, back.

¶ How the paynyns had' purposed' to haue
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym

4 myztely: capitulo xv

A Fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and
straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brullant
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many
8 other of his counceyl, and sayd to them: "my frendes,
I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought
to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete
reproche & despysyng, as ye see and knowe." "Syr,"
12 sayd Sortybrant, "I shal gyue to you good counceyl.
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the
prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this
16 prysoner; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe
vnto p^e said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in
good poynte: and I am sure that the frey[n]sshe men be
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see
20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for
to socoure hym; & your peple that shal be hydde in
the busshement shal come out on them & take them.
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your
24 playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to
be good, & was therwyth wel content; wherfore, wyth-
oute takyng of any other delyberacyon, the galowes
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place
28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on
hym with grete stauess, whyche greued hym sore: &
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a
councl. (2869)

Sortybrant advises
him to have Guy
hanged. (2884)

in front of the
castle,

and to set an
ambush for the
French if they
should try to
rescue him. (2880)

This advice is
approved. (2891)

20,000 Saracens
are placed in
ambush. (2892)

and Guy is led
bound to the
gallows. (2905)

He calls on his
companions for
help. (2011)

Roland, from a
window, sees the
gallows. (2013)

and tells the
others. (2017)

Naymes guesses
the object of the
gallows. (2023)

Floripas implores
Roland to rescue
Guy. (2028)

for she can never
survive him.

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke,
and hys eyen bounden, & sawe no thyng whyther he
went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to
crye: "O redemptour of the world, my maker and my 4
god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an
euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in
to thy kepyng; for the body taketh hys ende! And lyke
as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseeche and requyre 8
the to counceyll and comforte me. ¶ O noble barons
of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf I yeuffe suffre me to
be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland,
fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me 12
on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes,
Roulland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel
roche, and sawe the galowes reysed. Wherefore he came
to hys felawes and sayd: "I meruaylle moche what 16
thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the
dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon."
Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them,
that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20
guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng
al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they
knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued,
that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the 24
fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to
wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes
reysed, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husband, so
shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28
was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes,
shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged
tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,
by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the 32
wyndowe, & shal deye in despe^rracyon." and after she
came to roulland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and
kyssed hys feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Roulland, in

¹ g iij.

² g iij, col. 2.

- thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to
take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye,
and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme
4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the
tyme is ouer short; so that by the playsyr of god ye
shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes
armed them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes
8 and sheldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors
backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony fether,
rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth &
our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-
12 duyte & ¹loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but
x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In
thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-
gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,
16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged.
And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde,
that prestly he be reysed, And not to leue hym for lyf
ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he
20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I
swere ²to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde
durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal
haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in
24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my
lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr
chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne
of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it
28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good
courage they yssued out, noo thyng dretyng the puy-
saunce of the paynims. & after, Florypes and hyr
damoyselfs lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.
32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden-
aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes,
& the paynims were vnder the galowes, and were besy
to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

She urges them
to lose no time.
(2929)

The French arm
themselves
hastily, mount,
and prepare to
start. (2938)

Roland warns his
companions to
keep together,
(2944)

and to be ready,
each to help the
other. (2946)

Floripas brings
out the sacred
crown, (2960);
which the knights
kiss, (2962)

and then pass out
of the gates. (2966)

¹ orig. boyal.

² g iij, back.

Guy is on the point of being hanged, (2972)

but Roland puts the Saracens to flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of them.

The ambush breaks out. (2989)

Roland charges Cornyfer, (2996)

and slays him, (3008)

and then rides to the gallows, (3010) unbinds Guy,

who takes the arms and horse of a Saracen. (3032)

The French are hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes also, and a grete corde aboute hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynmys sayeng: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4 thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye shal repente." Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetuously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastily poursyewed that xx 8 of them ¹were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makyng a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of grete facyon, And began to crye: "ha! ye frensshe 12 men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is Iuged by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterprysed a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16 angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his shielde daungerously; but after that he was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20 puyssantly that he cleft hys heed doun to the body. and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto the galowes, and vnbylfelde & vnbonde syr guye of bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24 armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym, Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce, he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynmys 28 hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the barons of fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32 thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement & of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and puyssaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns.

¹ g iij, back, col. 2.

² g v.

to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were
 empessed to goo further. Emonge whome gye of
 bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was
 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd
 gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye
 traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney
 that I am escaped fro your handes." & by thus fyght-
 8 yng they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete
 bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng, on that other
 syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to
 empesse them the passage, that they myzt not wyth-
 12 drawe them. Wherefore Rolland, holdyng durandal in
 hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd
 to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs,
 but of necessitye we must auance vs for our owne con-
 16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no
 thyng, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland,"
 Sayd Gye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the
 toure we haue noo thyng to ete, & yf we were¹ wythin,
 20 how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body
 daungerously wounded in fyghtyng vpon the sarasyns,
 than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute
 daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day
 24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take
 it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the
 other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete
 purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng in
 28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is,
 Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Gye
 of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,
 and cryed to hym wyth an hie voys, that hit wold
 32 plesse hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for
 the prowessse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral
 shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the
 danoyss sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

Guy performs
marvellous feats.

The Saracens be-
gin to give way.
(3041)

Roland calls on
his companions to
make an effort to
gain the bridge,
(3052)

but Guy reminds
him that they
have no pro-
visions, (3055)

and says it is
better to die
fighting than be
starved. (3058)

All the others
agree. (3061)

Floripas from a
window cheers on
Guy. (3080)

¹ g v, col. 2.

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt and descomfyture of paynmys, that they eschewed & made them to flee tofore him as ¹the byrde tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyne came with a grete cours 8 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attayned hym so harde on the sometete of the heed, that he cleft hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherefore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12 hym: "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryzt dere."

The French make a charge, and

scatter the Saracens as sparrows before the hawk. (3101)

Guy slays Rampyre.

Roland praises his valour. (3109)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16 pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyege'd' and' foughten by the paynmys: ca. xvj

WHan Florypes the curtoys, beyng' wyth hyr damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem hyely: "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24 damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had wel spoken, and in tyme: "for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and therupon al the barons with one ²courage goon ageynst the 28 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche wyse pat they made them to voyde the place, & to wythdrawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they retorned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which certeyn paynmys ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

Floripas reminds the knights that they have no food. (3116)

The Saracens are driven back. (3128)

The French meet with 20 pack-horses, laden with

¹ g v, back.

² g v, back, col. 2.

- wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the toure. & in the waye as they returned, they fonde the body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day byfore, which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the brydge, and entrede, and after aualed the drawe brydge, and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyll contente dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them : " My barons, ye knowe that these frensshe men haue ryght euyll gouerned vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn, and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssaunce is ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete thought and melancolye what we may best doo."
- To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : " syr admyral, I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure." Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :

provisions, (3136)

which they drive inside the gates of the castle.

On their way they take up the body of Basyn. (3150)

Balan is furious

and calls a council, (3163)

to consider what is to be done.

Sortibrant advises him to frighten the French by

blowing of trumpets, &c.

Brillant says he
is a fool,

for the French are
not likely to be so
easily frightened,
(3184)

for there are in
the castle Roland,

and Oliver,

and Gerard,

Terry,

Naymes,

Guy, and 5 others.

And if they were
all like Roland

they would soon
chase the whole
Saracen army out
of Spain. (3204)

Balan is enraged,

and tries to strike
him, (3211)

"Sortybrant, frende! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue
not þat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben
of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde
wyth blowyng¹ & sownyng¹ of hornes. ¹Certeyn ye 4
haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to
you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is
there wythin: the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble
Rolland² is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8
that who-someuer Ioyneth to hym, he putteth hym to
deth: And there is the counte olyuer: knowe ye not of
his grete fyersnes, whyche conquerd Kyng Fyerabras,
the myghtyest of all the paynys? And I swere to 12
you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I
haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-
dyer, Gherard³, whyche hath doon to vs grete dominage.
Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another 16
fals olde olde knyght that named³ hym self Naymes, duc
of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged³. And
other ther be whyche I haue not named³. There ben 20
but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel
they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland², the ²neuwe of charles, is of soo grete
fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng¹, ne stroke ne 24
shotte that is gyuen hym: and doubte ye not, that, yf
they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they
shold chace vs oute of thys royaume or they ³shold slee vs.
And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28
he hath ryzt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed³
and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony
thyng holpen vs." ¶ Of these wordes that brillant
thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng¹ angry, & sayd to 32
hym: "ye haue ryght euyl and folysshly spoken." and
so sayeng, he wold³ haue smyton hym wyth hys staf,
but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng¹:

¹ g vj, col. 2. ² orig. nenewe. ³ g vj, back.

"Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyeces."

but Sortibrant prevents him. (3213)

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes, trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns were there assembled, that they helde p^e space of a myle

The Saracens are assembled; they cover a square mile of ground. (3221)

8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,

12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men.

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men, furyous and¹ wode as lyons, came to the yates of the

By means of engines they win the outer defences of the castle,

16 toure, & the maydens also al armed, whyche with the barons dyd so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouer-threwe and fyl down dede. For they were aboute on

20 hys, and threwe down grete stones, dartes of yron, & other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made contynuel resystence.

but the French drive them back. (3230)

¶ How the toure was broken and brente by
24 enchauntement, & the barons in grete peryl of deth, and restored by assaulte maad' on the Paynims: capitulo xvij

28 **T**He Paynims perseueryng in thassault afore sayd, Thenchautour came tofore the admyral, and sayd to hym: "Ryzt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte, 32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me." And whan they were alle redy as he had deuysed, he sette them rounde aboute the tour. And by hys crafte and

The engineer says he has his engines ready. (3250)

¹ g vj, back, col. 2.

He sets the walls
of the castle on
fire. (3280)

The French are in
despair, (3284)

but Floripas bids
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-
paration extin-
guishes the fire.
(3292)

Balan swears
vengeance on his
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says
the French must
soon give in,

for they have no
more shot nor
stones. (3302)

By a furious
assault the Sara-
cens break down a
large part of the
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that p^r
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &
make fyre at vtteraunce, ¹wherfore the frenashe men
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no
moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto
the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd temper
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre
artyfycyally brente the stones. thus she made this
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencyon to 16
make hys doughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and
trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al newe, and
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20
quyashed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And
thassaulte was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of dartes,
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the ²grete
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tumbled down to
the erthe. the barons of fraunce moche abashed, sayd 28
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-
quyashed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the
pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in
grete thougt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32
dysmaye ye noo thynge! thys toure is stronge ynough
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

¹ g vij.

² g vij, col. 2.

- plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetchē it, And
as wel may we slee the paynymys therwyth, as wyth
stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue,
4 came to hyr wyth grete Ioye, & kysseð hyr moche amer-
ously and swetelye. And after she wente & opened
the toure and place where the tresour¹ was Innumerable,
and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the
8 batylments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynymys,
in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture.
And more-ouer the paynmys, seeying the golde falle on
them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessyð their
12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concu-
pyscence of that golde they faught and slewe eche
other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &
²angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye
16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye
thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innu-
merable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste,
which I haue wyth grete payne³ & dylygence assembleð,
20 And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had
made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled me.
but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come
in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
24 Sortybrant answerð: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng
ameruayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for
he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for
he is a-slepe; I byleue none other: for in tyme passed
28 he hath wel watched & kepte it; but those frenssh men
ben so wyly theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym
subtylly." Thadmyral beyng al angry bycause the
nyght came on. repayred⁴ with his peple toward hys
32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte
table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely
with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

and advises them
to use her father's
gold for misailes.
(3327)

The French do so,
(3334)

and the Saracens
leave off the as-
sault and fight
amongst them-
selves for the
gold. (3340)

Balan, alarmed
and grieved for
his treasure,
causes his men to
retire. (3348)

Sortibrant com-
forts him,

and says Mahoun
must be asleep.

The Saracens
retire to their
camp.

¹ orig. tresour. ² g vij, bk. ³ orig. payue.
⁴ orig. And' repayred'.

Roland from a
window sees
Balan at supper,
(3358)

and proposes a
sortie. (3363)

They all arm and
start. (3364)

Balan sees them
coming, (3369)
and sends for
Espoulart, his
nephew, to meet
them. (3372)

Espoulart charges
Roland;

he is unhorsed,
(3386)

but is soon up
again.

Roland stuns him,
catches him up,
and carries him
away on his horse.
(3392)

Balan calls for a
rescue. (3397)

and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral
sytyng¹ at the table through the wyndowe, and after
cam to the other barons and sayd to them: "I my
lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4
hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde
hem wel at his ease. and me semeth it shold² be grete
honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue³ his
repaste." The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8
accorde, & hastely they armed them and put them in
poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng¹ to the place
where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was
subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and sente hastely for a 12
paynym, whyche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe.
And sayd to hym: "Espoulart, cosyn, peradventure
the frensshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper,
Therefore depesshe the, and be redy anone, and doo so 16
that they be taken & destroyed." and anone he was
redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came
ayenst the barons, holdyng¹ in hys honde a dart of stele.
And fyrst he encountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his 20
shelde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al
astonyed²; but it came soo to passe that it touched not
hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland
came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24
he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was
so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, ³that moche
lyghtly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Roulland
came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28
wyse that the paynym wyst not where he was. And as
he was fallyng¹ doun of hys hors, Rolland moche puy-
sauntly caught hym, & layed hym thwart vpon hys hors,
and bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32
rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys
neuewe. but they wyst not what to doo, For in de-
fendyng¹ them many of them were slayn and hurte

¹ g vij, back, col. 2.

² orig. lene.

³ g vij.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other
paynyns must retorne : & rolland cessed not to renne
tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons
4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shette the yates wel surely,
and had noo feare of ony empesshement.

but the French all
escape into the
castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the
second' book which conteyneth xvj chapy-
8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of
fraunce were socoured & the paynyns
confused'.

¶ Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for
12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'
Charles ; And' how Rychard of Normandy
was ordeyned' for to goo : capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng' thus assyeged and
detyened, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke
moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral,
whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it
pleased hyr : & they demaunded of hyr what man he
20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd : " he is sone
of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche
& hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete
dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc
24 Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr : " Madame, it is not
behoeful to put hym so to deth ; but sythe he is a man
of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we
been the more Ioyous. and I shal say to you wher-
28 fore : yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-
myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred
and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were
contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,
32 Rychard of Normandy called the other his felawes,
and sayd to them : " ye knowe wel how we ben here

They ask Floripas
who their prisoner
is. (3444)
She telle them he
is Balan's
nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes
to keep him to
exchange for any
of them which
might be taken.
(3452)

¹ g viij, col. 2.

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message, (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. (3459) Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. (3467)

enclosed in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyna. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold¹ conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rychard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For⁸ there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyna. for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape¹² wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost Ioyous¹⁶ lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked &²⁰ preyed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we²⁴ shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce² may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogier ansuerd and sayd: ²⁸ "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my deuoyr." The³² duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vncouenable for to goo thyder: for

¹ g viij. bk.

² g viij, bk, col. 2.

- whan the Paynmys shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubtet as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."
- 4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rycharð
- 8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suffysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valyaunte. And yf it happene that in doynge thys message
- 12 I be taken & slayn of the paynmys, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. ¹For whan he had
- 16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,
- 20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he shold be free al his lyf, & many othe thynges:" & thenne thus it was concluded that rycharð shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to
- 24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in ony place, ne soiourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rycharð promysed it &
- 28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rycharð, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by
- 32 them in ony wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours

William and Gerard offer to go, (3471) as also Guy, but Floripas will not let him go. (3477)

At last Richard says he will go, (3480)

to which they all agree. (3499)

They consult how he is to get away unseen. (3509)

Roland suggests that they should make a sortie,

and distract the
attention of the
Saracens while

Richard steals
away in the other
direction. (3529)

The knights weep
over Richard's
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them
fear nothing.

for by God's grace
he will soon bring
succour.

vpon the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they shal
be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs.
Rychard shal departe & passe forth & leue ¹vs, & we shal
remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4
whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shal mowe
be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know
ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete
moder, he shal saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8
shorte tyme we shal haue Ioye & consolacyon that we
shal hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng, the peres of
fraunce, seeyng that thys thyng was not yet achyueuē
surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12
theyr affayre. The noble duc ²rychard, seeyng his
felowes wepyng for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne
doubte ye noo thyng! yf god gyue me the grace, to
whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16
and thys contreye, and in especyal that I may fynde
myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge³ of mantryble, I may
wel ensure you that I shal brynge you socours in suche
wyse that by the grace of god ye shal sone be delyuerd." 20
The barons ansuerd to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and
puyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!"
After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyzt cam
on, & eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24
morne for to begynne to complyshe theyr enterpryse.

¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng
claryon, a ryght myghty kyng, ranne after
hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd⁴ 28
Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges:
capitulo ij

But a great disap-
pointment was in
store for them.

G Rete gryef and annoye cam to þ^e peres of fraunce
whan Rychard of Normandye shold departe for 32
to goo to kyng charles. On the morne whan

¹ h i, col. 2. ² orig. dul. ³ orig. brydde. ⁴ h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were
in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche
kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold
4 yssue out. Wherefore by the space of ij monethes they
coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day
emonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntynge a
lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the
8 bridge was forgotten, Thezne the barons armed them
& mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto
theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the
paynims, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began
12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were
there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.
and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr
enemies, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The
16 duc Rychard al in wepyng commaun'ded to god hys
felawes, And secretly departed, and took hys waye at
al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr
lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and
20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and
mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc
rychard, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the
hoost; and in wepyng they recommaunded hym swetely
24 to god many tymes. Rychard of Normandye thus
rydyng allone, had feare alwaye that he shold be
assaylled. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a
montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habun-
28 dantly. Thenne he doubted enterly that he shold be
empresshed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayt:
“O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is
ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn
32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf,” &
blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many
tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel
clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperceyued

For in the morn-
ing they found
the castls sur-
rounded by Sara-
cens, (3540)
so that for two
months they had
no chance of
going out. (3459)

At last an occa-
sion offers, and
they sally out,
(3567) and attack
the Saracens.

While they are
thus engaged
Richard steals off.
(3580)

His horse breaks
down. (3612)

In despair he
prays to God for
help,

and crosses him-
self.

Brillant and Sor-
tibrant see him,
(3633)

and tell Clarion,

who mounts and
rides after him.
(3640)

followed by other
Saracens. (3645)

Richard, looking
round, sees
the Saracens
coming after him.
(3653)

He is almost in
despair.

hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were
bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastely to Kyng
Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral,
and brillant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4
yonde messenger, ¹one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche
is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for
socoours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may
come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounte theyr 8
affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne
to vs grete dompage." Also sone as claryon herde
these tydynges, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon
hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, 12
For for to renne xxx legthes he wold not be wery; &
took hys shelde & his swerd of stele square & sharpe,
& ranne toward Duc Rychard as he had be enraged,
& other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rychard mounted 16
on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed,
& sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me
consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty
Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20
fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful
and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful,"
& thus as he was in this thougt he loked behynde hym,
& sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche 24
were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom
the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the
courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye.
Neuer²theles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28
byhelde the hoost of the paynyms came ageynst hym
with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat
his hert was. what thyng mygt he thynk that they
wold do wyth hym, & what tidynges his felowes shold 32
haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde &
susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus
ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

¹ h ij.

² h ij, col. 2.

- vpon the sayd coursour, whyche ranne faster and more
 swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The tayle
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-
 what reysed & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete
 thyes & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eeres;
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his noethrylles large &
 ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene &
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; &
 he was saddled with a sadle of yuorye, & the raynes of
 12 þe brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold;
 the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrde with
 iiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng moche melodyously.
 16 & þe paynym ¹smote hym with the spores moche
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more
 than xxx foot longe. And after escryed duc Rychard
 the noble knyght, sayeng wyth an hye voys: "by
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer
 achyue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng ony
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rychard
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued
 24 & chaunged, & ansuerd: "Sarasyne, wherfore arte thou
 of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced
 to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed thy tresour.
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-
 wardyd to the by me." The paynym answerd: "cer-
 tayne, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of
 32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng for the. I shal
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."
 Also sone as Rychard knewe hys entencyon, he auanced
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rychard, & wyth

In front comes
Clarion on a
horse, half white,
half red, (3659)

with a peacock's
tail,

a white mane,
and green eyes.

His breast piece
is hung with little
gold bells.

Clarion calls on
Richard to sur-
render. (3673)

Richard asks him
to let him go, as
he has never done
him any harm.
(3684)

Clarion declares
he will have his
life. (3686)

¹ h ij, back.

Clarion cuts at
Richard, but does
him no harm.
(3688)

Richard smites
Clarion on the
neck, and cuts his
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's
horse, (3705)

and lets his own
go, bidding it an
affectionate fare-
well. (3713)

The Saracens
coming up try to
catch Richard's
horse, but in vain.
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard¹ vpon hys shelde ; but
it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon
richard², which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym,
by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys ¹swerde which 4
was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym,
lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the
necke so ryzt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in
suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8
spere lengthe, & he put þ^e trunke of the body to the
erthe al dede ; & forthwyth he descended² fro hys hors,
& mounted² vpon that the good² courser of the Paynym,
whyche was the best hors of the world². Thenne 12
Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel
pourueyed² of an hors ; For he was so myghty, that yf
he had born vij knyghtes armed² vpon hym, he wold
not haue swette a droppe of water ; & for to swymme & 16
passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after
that he was thus horsed² at his ease, he said to his owen
hors by moche good affection : “ O gentyl hors doulstyn,
for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20
to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen
that he drawe þ^e in to suche a waye that þou mayst
come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them. in
many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24
serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apper-
teyneth to me I thanke the gretely.” & here vpon he
wente and² rode forth hys waye. And² anone the sara-
syns that followed² after, came ²& fonde the kyng² 28
Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were
so surprysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude
doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take
Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32
proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maa²
grete deffence, & took hys waye rennyng² for to retorne
to the place that he was departed fro.

¹ h ij, back, col. 2.

² h iij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh
 thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &
 knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo
 4 moche that they thought that duc Rychard'
 had' been deed'; & how the brydge of
 Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

- 8 **R**ychard of Normandye wyth his swerde in hys
 fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych rane
 after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of
 whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &
 the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recoun-
 12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the
 sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyted and
 slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not
 reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that sawe the hors
 16 come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,
 sone of kyng' grehier, & also sortybrant of conymbres,
 & sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel
 aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my
 20 neuewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.
 I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the
 Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors
 that yonder cometh," and thadmyrall commanded that
 24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that
 they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &
 cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in
 whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan
 28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was
 longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued,
 and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;
 and after that the yate was shette, they arenged them
 32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng
 pyetously. ¶ And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:

The Saracens find
 Clarion's body,
 and lament over
 him. (3724)

Balan sees Rich-
 ard's horse run-
 ning loose, (3740)

and thinks that
 Richard has been
 killed. (3742)

He orders the
 horse to be
 caught, (3744)

but none can
 catch him.

The knights admit
 him inside the
 gates,

and lament over
 Richard's death.

They are all in
great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none ⁴ helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these ¹ wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas com-
forte them. (3763)

"Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng ⁸ and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rycharde ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brougt the body of kyng ¹² Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethroclytes in hys entendement, cryed and sayd : "and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte ?"

The Saracens re-
turn bearing the
body of Clarion.
(3775)

The sarasyns ansuerd : "Syr admyral, we may not lye ¹⁶ to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than ^{iiij} tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- ²⁰ syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The

Balan swoons on
hearing of his
nephew's death.
(3785)

sarasyns thus makyng thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she ²⁴ knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : "Syr, knowe

There is great
grief over Clarion.
(3793)

ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe ? it is trouth that Rycharde your messenger ² hath slayn the ²⁸ kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareylle of bounte in al the world. & as wel for ^p deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & ³² here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoyr, to lode a good lyf and to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : "O my felawe of

Floripas explains
to the knights
what has hap-
pened. (3800)

¹ h ij, back.

² h ij, back, col. 2.

- armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though
- 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to
- 8 hym named Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre, which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to
- 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and ennoyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by
- 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on that other parte the ¹messenger of the frensshe men goeth thyder, and yf he recounzte his message to Charles, it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-
- 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages
- 24 the messenger, "I shal do your commaundement; and I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an hondred leghes contynuelly, I shal neuer be wery."
- 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromydary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou
- 32 suffrest the frenssh men to passe ouer the brydge, whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon the goddes, with floripes his douzter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a message to Galafre, the bridge-ward of Mantrible, (3825)

that he is to allow no one to pass the bridge,

on pain of death. (3845)

Orages starts on a dromedary.

He arrives at Mantrible and delivers his message, (3869)

that he is on no
account to let
Richard pass.
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike
Orages,
but is prevented
by the by-stand-
ers. (3884)

He sends 15,000
men to look out
for Richard. (3898)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmy-
ral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is
thys: After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of
the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetcche ayde, 4
vnto Charles theyr 'kyng'; the whyche hath slayue
kyng' Claryon. wherfore kepa wel thys passage that he
passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not
conne fynde the manere to saue thy lyf, but that thou 8
shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was
perturbede and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre
he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at
the mouth lyke a bore enchauffe, and took a staffe, and 12
had smyton the messenger yf it had not be letted by
them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted
vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he
assembled many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16
xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed the
brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte
vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to
recountre þe messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20
ture they myȝt fynde hym.

¶ How rycharde of normandye passed the ryuer
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt
hert which cam tofore hym: [ca.] iiij 24

Richard is in great
doubt how to pass
Mantrible.

He sees the Sara-
cens covering all
the country,

and begins to pray
for help. (3904)

RYcharde of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe
barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel
thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by ²hym self
myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28
in rydyng he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the
contree couerd wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng
theym he was sore troubled in hys mynde, [&] began to
crye: "O Ihesus, kyng' of glorie, at thys tyme be thou 32
kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

¹ h iiij, col. 2.

² h iiij, back.

see wel the declýne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force
 retorned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed¹ faythfully
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore,
 8 my god, my maker, I wotè not what to say, but that thy
 wylle be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn
 entencion : after the same gouerne me!" he beyng² nyghe
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng¹ to
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auanced
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed wyth an hyghe
 voys: "O messenger, what someuer thou be, thynke for
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ^e houre
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged."
 These wordes so herde of rychard were ²not to hym
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng¹ a swerde in
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquerd of
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced thorough the
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al
 24 deed; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,
 and rored lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-
 maunded hym self to our lord, that he shold preserue
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd his message to the
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer
 leueth hys seruantes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard
 of Normandy beyng¹ in thys medytacyon and thought

¹ orig. pormysed'.

² h iij, back, col. 2.

By the time he
 gets near the
 river the Saracens
 are close upon
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on
 him to turn and
 fight. (3929)

Richard turns and
 kills him, (3932)

and takes his
 horse.
 He rides to the
 bank of Flagot,
 which runs like a
 bolt from a cross-
 bow.

He commends
 himself to God.
 (3949)

God sends a milk-white hart, which goes before Richard. (3955)

The water rises till it is level with the banks. The hart enters the river,

and Richard follows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare not follow him.

The river sinks to its usual level.

Galafre lets down the draw-bridge. (3976)

Richard is now safe,

and rides on slowly.

for to passe ouer, god̃ sente a whyte herte which passed tofore rycharð: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4 And the ryuer began to aryse ¹soo hye that it flowed ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water; and Rychard̃ loked̃ behynde hym, & sawe many sarasyns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; 8 and thenne he recommaunded̃ hym to god̃ wyth good hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body, hauyng̃ in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he myȝt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12 passe ouer the ryuere; and soo toke the water & folowed̃ the hert. The paynmys seyng̃ that, were al abasshed and troubled̃, and there was not one that durst folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed̃, and 16 returned̃ in to hys former estate and̃ beyng̃. Thenne the paynmys made grete duel and̃ sorowe by cause they myȝt not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20 and̃ aualed̃ the chaynes, and̃ commanded̃ the paynmys, vpon payne of deth, that they shold̃ not cesse tyl that rycharð were taken, or ellys they shold̃ be all in the Indynacyon of thadmyral, and̃ in daunger to be loste. 24 Rychard̃ of Normandye came ouer in good̃ poynte, and̃ deuoutelye thanked̃ god̃ of the grace that he had̃ sente to hym, and̃ descended̃ fro hys hors for to vngyrde and̃ lose hys sadle. ²And after resengled̃ hym, and̃ took his 28 hors and̃ rode forth at hys ease, and̃ ladde that other hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore, For in shorte tyme he supposed̃ to fynde thexcersyte of kyng̃ Charles. The paynmys seeyng̃ thys, returned̃ 32 scoroufully, & wente to vnarme them, For other thyngs coude they not do.

¹ h v.

² h v, col. 2.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;

4 & other maters : capitulo v

IN as moche as rychard rode, whyche was moche
wery ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng
that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and
many other. and emonge the other, cam reynier, fader of
12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : " lordes and frendes, I am
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-
parent, whyche is of my specyal barons, whyche were
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that
16 ¹no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd
I despyse my self. Thenne by more strengier reason
the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-
20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !
For I depose my self from hens forth." Ganellon was
there which was loyeful, what someuer semblaunt he
24 made, and sayd : " syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I
shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde
that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, &
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,
28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygre more is moche
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete
fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys &
32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that
Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad crysten,
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

Meanwhile,
Charles is in grent
trouble about his
knights. (4004)

He calls his
barons,

tells them his
trouble,

and declares his
intention of re-
signing the crown.
(4015)

Ganellon advises
him to give orders
for a return home,
(4025)

for Balan is too
strong for them,

¹ h v, back.

now that the
douzeperes are
dead.

In time, he says,
their children will
be grown up,

and then Charles
can return and
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons
for grief.

He mourns over
his disgrace.
(4054)

He asks his barons
for their opinions.
(4068)

All Ganelon's
friends support
his advice, (4081)

and declare they
will go no further
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure
you : Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there
many of our chyl dren and parents that shal wexe grete ;
and^r or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And^r 4
thenne they with vs ¹shal come in to spayne, for to con-
queste the londes and^r seynouryes that we haue enter-
prysed, And^r shal recouure the holy relyques, of whome
I haue grete pyte. And^r more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys
melancolye ; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun² in a 12
swoune, And^r spake not the space of a grete houre ; and^r
in wepyng bytterly he sayd^r to hym self : ¶ "O poure
caytyf and^r vnhappy, what shalt thou do ? yf thou re-
torne, þou shalt be dys^rhonoured. yet were it better to 16
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he
was comen to hymself, he sayd^r to hys barons that were
there : " Loo ! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20
wythout takyng vengeaunce of my noble barons which
ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me,
but I shal be shamed, and^r wyth good^r ryght." Machayre,
aulbery, and^r geffroy, and^r other, moo than an hondred, 24
whyche al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd^r
alle wyth one consente : " Syr emperour, purpose ³ye
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd, For he 28
hath spoken wysely ; and therfor conclude ye to retorne
in to fraunce wythout gooyng^r any ferther on. we ben
xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyder that, for any
thyng that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. 32
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr
comforte, & hym that was chyef of the conseruacyon of
their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd : " O god of.

¹ h v, back, col. 2.

² orig. donn.

³ h vj.

- heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge
them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,
arows vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce
shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted
& brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage,
they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly.” Thenne they
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”
¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche
wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that
yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and
24 tranquylte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.
But fyerabras, which was present, blamed themstrongely;
And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef at-
taynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys
they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.
32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge
them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns
Charles not to
trust Ganelon or
his friends. (4098)

Ganelon's friends
abuse Rayner,
(4108)

who knocks
Alorys down.
(4117)

A great distur-
bance ensues,

which is quieted
by Fierabras and
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party
vow vengeance
against Rayner.

¹ h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders
Alorys to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.
(4149)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Alwaye nedes must the kyng be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory¹ on hys knees cryed duc Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue⁴ doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of kyng charles; & thus they maad the pees. And after theemperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he turned backe that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam⁸

Geoffrey d'Hante-
ville advises
Charles to follow
Ganelon's advice.
(4168)

geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd: "Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng, wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel as any persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I¹² and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere¹⁶ be passed, the chyldren that be now in fraunce shal be grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a companye, that lyztely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20

Charles gives way,

terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wyll retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24 And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the harnoys trussed, wherof² the companye of traytres were Ioyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, & in especyal Reyner, whych retorned withoute hys sone²⁸ Olyuer, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was hys hert, by cause he hath³ loste al hys comforte.

and orders the
retreat home to
France, (4189)

to the great grief
of Rayner and
others. (4195)

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

¹ h vj, back.

² h vj, back, col. 2.

³ orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce :
capitulo vj

- 4 **W**Han charles was mounteð on horsback, and in
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,
Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them with-
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr : he taryeð sayeng :
8 "O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now
leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blameð. O Rolland,
how I haue loueð you ! may euer your vnelle so longe
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged ? Godð deffende
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte
of my fayte." thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoune to
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had : <sup>Charles laments
over the loss of
his barons ; (4207)</sup> 'moche
16 heynes had he that tyme. "Alas !" sayð Charles,
"Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral ! wel am I cause of
al your perdyceyon !" In makynge thys heynes, the
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-
perour lokeð toward the eest, and from ferre he sawe
rychard come rydynge vpon an hors sore rennyng, and
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and
goo no ferther forth. "I see," sayð he, "yonder comynge
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and
ledeth on hys ryghtsyde a fayr courser, as me thynketh ;
and he semeth by hys rydynge that he is Rychard of
normandy. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys
32 day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other
barons, that they be alyue." Thenne the hoost taryeð,
and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

he swoons from
grief. (4221)

The army pre-
pares to start
home. (4227)

Charles sees
Richard coming,
(4229)

and orders a halt.
(4253)

He recognises
Richard. (4247)

Charles enquires
of Richard how
Roland and the
others are. (4257)

Richard tells him
how they are
besieged by Balan,
(4265)

that they have
Floripes and the
sacred relics,
(4271)

and have sent him
to beg Charles to
come to their
help. (4276)

The king is
pleased,

and says if they
can hold out for
six days he will
deliver them.
(4300)

moche gentlylly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayð to rychard
of normandy: "Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth
you? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of 4
myn other ¹barons? be ye come allone? be they alyue
or dede? telle me, I praye you." Rychard answered:
"Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyged by ballant the
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12
fyers & terryhle, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16
curtoys doughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue 20
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,
ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a 24
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne allowed in hys
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not
²but Rolland and hys felowes shold haue dyed. "Now 28
gentyl Rychard," sayð the kyng, "is the toure in
whyche they been bysyged, stronge & wel garnyssed
of vytayl for to defende them only whyle? yf they may
holde vj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32
hys compyces." "Syr," answered Rychard, "I shal
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

¹ h vij, col. 2.

² h vij, back.

- fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude
 Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.
 the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is
 4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where
 the passage is moche daungerous. and the walles of that
 cyte ben made of marbre cymented and fortifyed with
 toures, and there renneth a ryuer ryȝt hydous, whyche
 8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,
 & renneth so fast and brayeth, that there is noo bote ne
 shyppe may passe thereon. and the brydge is half a myle
 longe, And in the myddes there is a toure¹ of marbre
 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon; & the yate is
 garnysshed & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked.
 ¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous
 and grete, massyf, stronge and ²felonnous, whyche bet-
 16 ter resembleth the deuyl than ony man or persone. he
 is as blacke as pytche boyled, & hath x thousand
 knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by
 force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may
 20 be doon to them, they doubt it not. And yf we passe
 not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the
 brydge; For by force we may noo thyng do. but it
 byhoueth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And
 24 somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes; and
 there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr
 swerdes vnder, And there shal come after vs grete som-
 myers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al
 28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that euery
 man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue goten
 the fyrst gate, I shal soun & blowe myn horne, And
 wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal haue
 32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to
 our entencyon." Thys counceyl was wel approued by
 the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd rychard by cause
 he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple.

Richard tells him
 that the tower is
 surrounded by the
 Saracens,

and that he will
 have to pass the
 bridge of Mantri-
 ble, (4309)

which is kept by
 a giant,

as black as pitch,
 with 10,000 men.
 (4321)

He proposes a plan
 by which they
 may pass it by,
 disguising some
 knights as mer-
 chants. (4345)

Charles approves
 of the plan. (4350)

¹ orig. tonre.

² h vij, back, col. 2.

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerd. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente & ¹bonde heye and grasse to-gydre, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4 chauntes. euery man wel armed vnder hys cloke, & swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hundred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue to- 8 fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nautes folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12 taryeng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maað mencyon.

Five hundred French knights disguise themselves as merchants, (4369)

and start on,

while the others lie hid in a wood. (4400)

¶ How by the moyen & counceyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16 strong brydge of mantryble was wozne, not wythoute grete payne; And what maner man galafre was: capitulo vij

THEmperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20 abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of normandye, hoel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on the waye to goo toward man-tryble, and ladde wyth 24 them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed. For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the puyssaunce of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de 32 maunded of Rychard: "What may there be of this

Richard and his party ride on,

driving the pack-horses before them. (4395)

His companions are frightened at the sight of the river and the strength of the bridge. (4405)

¹ h viij.

² h viij, col. 2.

place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men 4 of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst 8 yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynyns: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns 12 but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After ¹these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; 16 & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng¹ hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so 20 hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyled pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote 24 longe, his eeres so grete that they myzt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued 28 hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the keypyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of 32 that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knowen of hym. For yf there had ony be knowen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4418)

Galafre sees them coming. (4437)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4445)

¹ h vij, back.

Galafre challenges
the French
knights. (4451)

Richard tells him
they are mer-
chants on their
way to the fairs,

and bearing pre-
sents to Balan.
(4456)

Galafre says that
twelve Frenchmen
had passed the
bridge without
paying toll, (4475)

as well as a
messenger,

who had slain his
cousin Clarion,
(4487)

wherefore Balan
had ordered him
to let no one pass,

neuer none haue escaped¹ but he shold haue ben dede.
Thus, thenne, whan they were ¹at mantryble, Rychard
passed afore. and whan he was at the entre of the gate,
Galafre came to hym & sayd: "vassal, what are ye? 4
wherfore come ye hyther?"

¶ Rychard, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage,
& began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte
whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8
chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl
goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we
goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at
Aygre more, we shold soiourne there, and gyue to thad- 12
myral somme precyous yestes that we here brynge.
These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al
esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr,
we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16
waye we ought to goo." Galafre ansuerd: "knowe ye,
that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that
been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen 20
passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes-
sagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me
theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord
thadmeral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them
that other day escaped preuily away as a theef, whiche 24
rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & ²passed
ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn
the kyng¹ Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye.
now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28
brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely
wythout to haue ony mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For
his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the 32
paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he com-
maunded me thre tymes that I shold not suffre ony
persone, lord, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And that

¹ h viij, back, col. 2.

² i j.

- I shold^d serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of
 theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe
 what ye be." Rycharð heryng thys, bowed^d his hede :
- 4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nautes, and Reyner of genes
 goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he
 began to doubte, and sayd^d to them that there shold^d
 nomoo entre, and auaunced^d hym and drewe vp the
- 8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche
 he dred^d not, and sayd^d to them in grete fyerste : "ye are
 ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-
 maundemente, And therfor ye four shal be sette in
- 12 pryson, and the other that come after you also. And
 to-morn I shal sende you prysoners ¹ to my lord^d thad-
 myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your
 mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there
- 16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-
 eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby
 foure tymes aboute : "By god^d," sayd^d Ryol, "I may no
 lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;
- 20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded^d !" And therwyth
 he threwe of his cloke, and smote vpon the paynym ; but
 he was so strongly armed^d that he myght do hym no
 harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rycharð^d
- 24 and Reyner semblably caste of. theyr clokes, and eche
 of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre
 vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed^d
 ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed
- 28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and maylled^d.
 ¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and supposed for to haue
 smyton Ryol, and enhaunced hys axe that was grete
 and heuy and also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke
- 32 come, and was habylle, and lepte a syde, and the stroke
 smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a
 marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted^d.

unless he is
 known. (4501)

Raoul and two
 others pass on to
 the bridge. (4509)

Galafre raises the
 bridge, (4514)

and calls on them
 to surrender.
 (4517)

Raoul strikes at
 him,

and cuts off a piece
 of his ear.

The others cut at
 him, but cannot
 hurt him. (4541)

Galafre cuts at
 Raoul with his
 axe, (4552)

but misses him.

Rayner knocks
Galafre down with
a branch of a tree.
(4568)

1000 Saracens
assemble. (4573)

Richard lets
down the bridge,
and the 500
knights enter.
(4581)

Then he blows his
horn, (4575)

and Charles with
all his men come
up, (4587)

Ganelon in front.
(4589)

“Ha! god of heuen!” sayd Reyner, “how he
smyteth oultrageously! ¹I am al abashed of the puy-
saunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne
gryeue.” He thus sayeng, he took a grete braunche of 4
a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduysed and
marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth
in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to
therthe; & whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye 8
so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made
grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyms of man-
tryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel
whyte there were redy armed moo than x thousand. 12
there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Nor-
mandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed down
the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred
knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth 16
them; but at the entre of the gate the paynyms en-
countred them: there was a grete medle and recountre;
many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there
slayne and hurte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned 20
it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood
it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his
puyssaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly,
and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came 24
to the brydge. ¶ Ganelon, whyche after was tray-
tour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that
cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reysed; but the
loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured 28
not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe,
by the playsyr of god.

¶ How by force and’ strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred’ in to mantryble, after that 32
Galafre was slayn, not wythstandyng’ that

¹ i j, back.

² i j, back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym ;
and' many other maters : capitulo viij

- 4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people & confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. In the fight at the gate of Mantrible
and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome he attayned wyth hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway
8 by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel hys deuoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þ^e grounde, Charles and Ganellon bear them well. (4595)
12 which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys axe in hys honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrti frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon Charles sees that Galafre is not dead,
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunded to slee hym ; & so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the and orders him to be slain. (4611)
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd ; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo 50,000 Saracens come to help those of Mantrible, (4630)
24 stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquere or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geaunt moche fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had amongst them a giant and giantess, named Ampheon and Amyot. (4652)
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde, and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, & helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf,
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed : " Where is charles the kyng of fraunce ? wyl he now bere wyth hym the Ampheon challenges Charles, (4660)

and threatens
him. (4672)

relyques to Saynt Denys¹ by mahon, by the whyche I comforte my self, it were better ¹for hym, olde dotard, that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe certaynly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer ⁴haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, & hanged alle quycke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were ⁸seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth in hys courage, & sette hys shielde tofore hym, wyth hys ¹²swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym soo myghtely that he clefted hym in two pyeces, & ¹⁶myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maað hym falle to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherefore the Sarasyns were all moeued and affrayed, And as people enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, ²⁰plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

Charles attacks
Ampheon,
and with his
sword cuts him in
two. (4686)

Charles calls for
help. (4693)
Richard and three
others join him,

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rychard of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, and ²⁴Syr Ryol du mauns, ²whyche alle had courage lyke vnto lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the paynims to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche ²⁸were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette it, in makynge grete defence with bowes and other shotte, besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages, which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue ³²thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept ayenst the sarasyns by the frenssh men. There was

and drive the
Saracens back
into the town.
(4699)

The Saracens
surround them.
(4708)

¹ i ij, col. 2.

² i ij, back.

grete bruyt in thys recountre; And though Charles
doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that
yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of
4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed
ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate
grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And
wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland
8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer
haue seen them.

Charles is almost
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, escryed
and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye
12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte down these
Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel
that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl
acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despyed, and
16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be
confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for
to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in
pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs
20 auance vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys
strengthe and the valure of hys persone." Wyth these
wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne,
Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue
24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye
ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete
slaughter of turkes and of Paynymys.

Richard encour-
ages him, (4715)

and the five push
forward into the
town. (4722)

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns,
28 cryed "a larme and socours" moche hye and furyously.
Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte;
Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good;
& came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the
32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely
to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to
assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth
brondes and barres of yron, and mortal shotte, where as

Charles calls for
assistance.
Ganellon hears
him,

and wishes to
help him. (4729)

dede now." Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge
 you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure
 ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of
 4 treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye
 "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all
 the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the
 belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganelon, that thenne
 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

and calls on them
 to succour him.
 (4780)

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he
 sawe that the brydge was not drawen up, And thenne
 he and Ganelon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre
 12 in to the cyte. ¹And whan they were wythin, & the
 traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely
 theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth
 the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode
 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that
 eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynmys cryed
 and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that
 they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad-
 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon
 & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but
 for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute
 of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllid of theyr rychesses
 24 and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doying, a messenger
 departed secretly for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte
 and telle the tydynge of theyr destructyons.

Fierabras and
 Ganelon fight
 nobly,

and the town is
 won. (4792)

The Saracens send
 to Balan for help.
 (4800)

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe
 28 greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how
 hyr two sones were baptysed of the Em-
 perour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were
 gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe
 & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche ²were

¹ i iij, back.

² i iij, back, col. 2.

Amyot the giant-
ess rushes out,
armed with a
scythe,

and slays numbers
of the French.
(4820)

Charles shoots her
with a cross-bow.
(4832)

The town is
sacked. (4845)

Charles remains
at Mantrible three
days. (4841)

He finds the
children of the
giants. Amyot,

whom he causes
to be baptised,
under the names
of Roland and
Oliver. (4855)

troubled, — She was as blacke as pytche boyled : hyr
eyen were rede as brennyng fyre : she had a grete
vysage & croked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely
affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond, & also aferde for 4
hyr ij sones, of whyche she was late delyuerd ; — soo she
in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe
trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon
the frensshe men so Impetuously that she maad grete 8
dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel ap-
proche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl conte-
tente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse
bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12
he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl
doun deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr
throthe a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles,
she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16
she neuer moeued after ; wherfore after that, the yates
of the towne and other deffences were not keppe ne
defended, but that Charles dyd his wyll of alle.
¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20
the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel
refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded.
For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place ¹ was so
stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24
kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and
smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he
abode thre dayes in departyng ² & destributyng the
goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28
And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot,
In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyliden, of
the fornamed geauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was
wel Ioyous, and were baptysed ; & one he named Roul- 32
land, and that other Olyuer ; and dyd do them wel to
be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they
were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

¹ i iij.

² orig. departyng.

thempour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that
 same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the
 stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgec-
 4 tyon, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Nor-
 mandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, Ryol of
 mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge
 and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed bal-
 8 lant the admyral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other
 peres of fraunse. Rychard answerd: "syr emperour,
 me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold
 abyde for to kepe þ^e brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand
 12 men." and lyke as Rychard sayd, so was it doon.
 and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be
 heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trom-
 pettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward
 16 aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete
 estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel
 on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle
 for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the
 20 multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd:
 "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and
 playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of thys
 people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges
 24 and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssaunce
 sythe they be at my wylle and commaundement."
 After that he had sayd thus, he blessyd hym, And in
 the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the
 28 sayd Emperour had in hys compagne an hondred thou-
 sand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the
 fyghtars of thyrten contreyes. the frenssh men rode
 forth: Rychard of normandye was in the auaunte garde,
 32 And the Duke Reyner² in that other. Anone the
 tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn,
 & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted,³ wherfore
 he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Charles consults
 as to whom he
 shall leave in
 charge of
 Mantriblé. (4875)

By the advice of
 Richard Howel
 and Raoul are left
 there with 5000
 men. (4881)

Charles, seeing
 the magnitude of
 his forces, thanks
 God. (4897)

He has 100,000
 men.

Balan is told of
 the death of
 Galafre, and the
 capture of
 Mantriblé. (4923)

¹ i iiij, col. 2.

² orig. Reyuer.

³ i iiij, bk.

In great grief and
rage he curses
Mahoun, (4927)

and smashes his
image. (4939)

Sortibrant advises
him to repent and
humble himself
before his gods,
(4948)

and to send out
spies to see if
Charles is coming.
(4961)

Balan is per-
suaded and
repents. (4963)

man fro hym self, sayeng: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy power is nought. O cursyd god & recreaunte, thou art nothyng worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and hast 4 consented to my dyshonour, as I now wel see, whych ouztest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayeng, the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, & ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8 soo grete a stroke vpon the heed, that he fyl down, & was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynyms were not wel abused, they myght knowe clerely theyr Infydelyte and fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages 12 that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and haue no consolacion. A lytel vnderstandyng and lacke of wytte, & also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16 Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng the desolacyon of thadmyral, counceyllid hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enlyne to do to 20 hym obeyssaunce, Seeyng that Charles hath wonne by his puyssaunce my cyte and stronge tour ¹of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admyral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hys people, or brenne them, 28 without ony mercy or pyte. And thenne after ye may caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and smyte of the heed of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth them." Whan the admyral ballant had herde Sorty- 32 brant, consyderyng hys affectyon, humbly he retorned to mahon, purposyng to do as he had sayd.

¹ i iiii, back, col. 2.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled'
 more strongly than euer they were, And'
 the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-
 4 fortified' by the holy relyques, by them
 adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayed soo moche thadmyral, & with
 hym the olde kyng Coldroe tempestet hym, &
 8 brillant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had
 doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold make amendes.
 The admyral beyng content for their ¹affectyon, sware
 that he shold encrease Mahon, and Augment of a thou-
 12 sand weyzt, after their custome, of fyn gold and other
 precyosytees. And anone dyd do sowne trompettes
 and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were
 assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed. And the
 16 admyral maad to brynge hys engynes for to throwe
 grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and also
 for to destroye the freysshe men & hys doughter. And
 thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for
 20 tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes therto; wyth
 whych the paynmys made fyue grete hooles in the
 toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his
 ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland, wyth
 24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr
 hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not
 soo hardy emonge them but that they were abashed,
 not wythstandyng they had good wylle to defende
 28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with
 stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he
 dyd them nomore hurt ne damage. This doynge, thad-
 myral cryed: "O my frendes and subgettes, doo your
 32 deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure; For yf ye so
 do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles
 himself before his
 gods,

and promises
 them gifts. (4965)

He orders batter-
 ing-engines to be
 brought up
 against the tower.
 (4979)

Five great
 breaches are
 made in the wall.
 (4987)

Roland and
 Oliver defend the
 tower well.
 (4991)

Balan threatens
his daughter.

¹make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a brennyng^r fyre, for she hath wel deserued^t it, doying^r to me the dys^honour that euery man knoweth." ¶ After these wordes the paynmys were more feruent than they ⁴ had ben tofore, & surmounted^t by strengthe, scaled the toure, and mounted vp, and entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but p^o last stage that was. Rolland seyng^r thys, sayd^t to them: ⁸

The Saracens
swarm in at the
breaches. (5011)

Roland cheers on
the French
knights.

"lordes & brethern! in thonour of god^t our maker, late vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe thys day, but that we shal be surprysed, taken, and defeated^t." "Brother & felowe," sayd^t ¹² Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal please our creatour, & we been al good^t fyghtars. In

Oliver proposes a
sally. (5020)

the name of God^t, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to assayle our enemyes. I had leuer to dye there withoute, ¹⁶ and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth dys^honour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd^t semblably. Florypes, seeyng^r thys, was al abasshed, and demaunded^t the barons yf they wold goo out for to ²⁰ goo assaylle the paynmys, & sayd^t to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour & of good^t partye, I praye to god^t

Floripas encour-
ages them, (5039)

that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I promyse you ²⁴ yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I ²⁴ shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be Ioyeful."

and they drive
the Saracens
back,

wyth the wordes³ the barons goo smyte and hewe down the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede & hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote ²⁸ them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anone as they had gotten thoo holes, they stopped^t them & faste enclosed^t them. and after florypes axed fyrst of naymes ³² duc of bauyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and sayd^t: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed^t me, and sware, that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I

and stop up the
breaches.

¹ i v, col. 2.

² i v, back.

³ orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the
 nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I
 haue long kept." The barons heryng¹ thys, wepte for
 4 Ioye, & sworn to hyr that they shold do no thyng to
 hyr, but al loyalte and² trouthe. Florypes wente thenne
 and² fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and tofore
 them she opened² it; & assone as the relyques were taken
 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a
 meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripas brings
 out the sacred
 relics, (5045)

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, de-
 uoutely smytyng¹ them self on their brestes by con-
 12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes ¹of bauyere was the
 fyrst that kyssed² them wyth grete reuerence, & the
 other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the
 paynmys were mounted on hye. And² assone as they
 16 sawe them, they tomble²d down to þ^e grounde, dede, & al
 to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O
 lord² god² of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke
 the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see
 20 wel and² knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we
 haue ofte spoken." And² Incontynent he took hardynes
 and courage, and² after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern,
 now we be recomforded², so that we shal neuer fere ne
 24 doubte paynmys ne sarasyns." And² after, Florypes
 remysed² the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-
 myral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dought-
 ter wyth them; & he, ful of a fals entencyon, escryed²
 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold² be vnder-
 stonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where
 thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted²
 the, & ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thyn
 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst pryson-
 ers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that
 trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche
 fool but neuertheles thy puterye shal ²not endure

which the knights
 kies with great
 reuerence. (5052)

At the sight of
 the relics the
 Saracens fall
 down dead from
 the walls. (5055)

Balan sees his
 daughter at a
 window and
 abuses and
 threatens her.
 (5068)

¹ i v, back, col. 2.

² i vj.

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brénne you al." Florypes
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4
made a sygne as though she had menaced hyr fader;
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to
gadre hys peple, and comaunded to shote & lose the
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe.
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogier went in to a
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynims, whyche were
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynims: Olyuer
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogier Margotte, and smote 16
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Floripas threatens
him with a stick.
(5093)

The Saracens
make a furious
assault and a
great part of the
wall is broken
down. (5101)

The French use
the Saracen idols
as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons
with rage, (5117)

and again abuses
his gods. (5123)

Sortybrant
reproves him,
(5127)

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20
hys courage, that for sorowe he tombled down as a dede
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete ¹desolacyon for
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24
he shal euer be my frende & specyal byloued, þat wyl
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte
hym, sayeng that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than
xv parties." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou
hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32
the day that þou haddest grete puyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

¹ i vj, col. 2.

there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good² a god² :
 he gyueth vs plente¹ of whete, of wyn, and of other
 goodes also ; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought
 4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye
 smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better
 aduysed, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto
 you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Vpon these
 8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl
 entred in to hym, whyche sayd in thys manere after
 that he had adoured hym : " Admyral, ryche lord, ne
 dyscomfyt you not : do sowne your trompettes &
 12 hornes, ²and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the
 toure ; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe
 men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyce²,
 and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette
 16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maad grete shotte
 ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and
 almoost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seyng
 thys, had grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout
 20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogier the danoys sayd to hys
 felawes : " O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fy-
 delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late
 none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in
 24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse.
 ye see now pat the tour gooth to grounde, And almoost
 these sarasyns be medled wyth vs. But as touchyng
 to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule
 28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to
 holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so
 grete a dyscomfytur of these paynyns, that euery man
 shal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde
 32 durandal ; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-
 helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe
 and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the
²sarasyns, and there dyd suche dylygence, that alle-

and begs him to
have patience.

A false devil,
under the form of
Mahoun,

urges Balan to
renew the
assault,
promising him
success. (5140)

Balan is delighted,
and orders his
men up again.
(5147)

The French are
almost in despair,

but are comforted
by Ogier, (5171)

and they drive
the Saracens
back again.
(5180)

¹ orig. pleute.

² i vj, back.

² i vj, back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-
yng^t theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to
hem, and^e also remembryng^t the menaces of hyr fader 4
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted^e hyr
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had^e tydynges
of¹ thoost of charles, and^e the admyral also; 8
and^e how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously,
which allone was sente to the admyral, and^e
what he dyd^e: capitulo x[i]

Naymes from a
window sees
Charles and his
army coming.
(5207)

THe Frensshe men beyng^t in thys contynuel payn 12
of bataylle for to defende þ^e toure, Duc Naymes of
bauyere went vp on hye, and^e sawe oute of a wyndowe,
& sawe byneth in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16
of men of armes: And thought in hym self that they
came for to socour and^e ayde them. and^e anone sent
for hys felawes for to come & see them. Aasone as
Florypes vnderstood^e it, she came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20
sayeng: "O glorious ²vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,
worschypped^e mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue
herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere
loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and^e kysse 24
me." Of the Ioye of Florypes, were Ioyeful the erles
and^e lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-
forted^e whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin
was the dragon wel figured^e. Grete Ioye and grete 28
consolacion was emonge them, & they had^e cause, seen
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam
to thadmyral, & sayd^e to hym, that Charles wyth an
hondred thousand men of armes came makyn^g grete 32
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe counceylled^e anone that

Florypes thanks
God for the news,
(5223)

and they all-
rejoice.

A messenger
tells Balan that
the French army
is coming. (5231)

¹ orig. yf.

² i vij.

- euery man shold be armed, and that they shold goo
 mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl
 was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-
 4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in He sends 50,000
 grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to men to meet
 thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore. them.
 Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandye wyth hys con-
 8 fanon reysed vp, whyche came al afore: and alle taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr
 horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was The French
 nyghe. And wythoute makynge lodgysses or other bivouac for the
 12 thynge, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr night. (5251)
 tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the
 Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good
 araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-
 16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou In the morning
 knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I Charles telle
 loue the the better. yf thou my3test pourchace and Fierabras that if
 make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon Balan will be
 20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and baptised he shall
 Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes keep all his
 I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I kingdom. (5263)
 promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf
 24 he take harne, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre,
 for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-
 bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym, Fierabras advises
 yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content. Charles to send a
 messenger to his
 28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne father. (5275)
 haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye."
 Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of
 Normandye, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and
 32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost pro-
 pyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall?
 By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he Charles proposes
 to send Ganelon.
 wold, for to recounthe & speke hooly thys message. I (5283)

¹ i vij, col. 2.² i vij, back.

Richard approves
of this,

and Charles sends
for Ganelon

and gives him
his instructions.
(5301)

Ganelon arms
himself,
and starts. (5307)

He rides up to
Balan's tent,
(5322)

and delivers his
message to the
Sultan, (5325)

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he
dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye
wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rycharð
answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4
message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to
hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say
to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed & renye
mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8
that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-
fred for al humayn creatures; & after, that he yelde to
me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, &
also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12
hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys
contreye & hys landes: & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we
shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym
no mercy." Ganelon was contente for to goo thyder 16
allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted
vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke
his shelde, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went
in to the vale of Iosue hastely. and anone he was 20
taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but whan
they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to
thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo,
& he taryed ¹ not tyl that he came tofore thabytacyon of 24
thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly
countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete
valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral
knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28
Ganelon spake hardyly to hym in this manere: "Sara-
syn, take hede & vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of
the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty
Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32
renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dya-
bolyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al
the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

¹ i vij, back, col. 2.

- deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the¹ crosse, for to redeme al the world. & yf thou so do, thou art assured not onely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy
- 4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou wylt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art deffied, & al thy people.
- 8 & yf thou wylt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wythdrawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth, and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,
- 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royame and thy rychesses to his ²seruauntes. Therefore aduyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys
- 16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente
- 20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt neuer recounte to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a
- 24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche seyng that, escryed moche strongly tauenge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty
- 28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, & demaunded Rolland
- 32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that he was crysten, and by presumyng made emonge them they Iudged that it was Ganellon that had spoken to thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to
- ¹ orig. ithe. ² i viij.

calling on him to become Christian on pain of death. (5357)

Balan, in a rage, threatens him with a stick. (5345)

Ganelon draws his sword and cuts down Brulliant. (5358)

Balan calls on his men to seize Ganelon, but he rides off and escapes. (5360)

The knights in the tower recognize him. (5371)

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte ¹hym grace to
 passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf
 he come not to his good desyre." ¶ The other barons
 sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4
 Ganelon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of
 a montayne, and there he turned hym ayenst the
 Paynims, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of
 the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8
 named murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned the
 paynym vpon the helme, and clefted hym to the breste:
 And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of
 kyng Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd 12
 to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys
 baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And
 wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you &
 charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I 16
 were in hys companye, I shold make grete marterdom
 on these Paynims." Neuertheles he was strongely
 chaced of the paynims. But whan they sawe the
 hoost of Charles, they retourned aback, and wente & 20
 tolde the affayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo
 than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore
 they counceyllled that euery man shold arme hym, &
 that counceyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24
²knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an
 Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in
 menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencyon
 was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28
 come to hys desyre.

Ganelon turns on
 his pursuers,

and slays two of
 them. (5385)

Oliver sees this
 feat,

and wishes he
 were with him.
 (5395)

The Saracens
 pursue Ganelon

till they see the
 army of Charles.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned ten
 bataylles, and how they dyd' & were
 recounted' of the puyssaunce of the 32
 admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-
 uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

¹ i viij, col. 2.

² i viij, back.

- W**han Ganellon was comen to kyng¹ Charles, themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that
- 4 Ganellon had tolde hys message, whyche was suche :
 “Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was wel happy that I escaped, For I haue been chased.
- 8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.
- And anone they sowned hornes and trompettes, & was
- 12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-land herde the sowne, and the voys of ¹the frensshe hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced & made good chyre. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al
- 16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made ten bataylles : In the fyrst, he ordeyned Rychard of Normandy ; Duc Reyner of genes had the second,
- 20 Ganellon the thyrde, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius the viij, Sampson the ix, And of the tenthe was con-duitour charles the kyng. & in eche bataylle were x
- 24 thousand men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng comyng, he sayd to brullant, “who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in to bataylle with an hondred thousand paynyms ;”
- 28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes. & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant began to goo a grete bowedraut tofore the other, and
- 32 began to crye “haro ! haro ! where is charles themperour wyth his euyl chere ? loo ! I come to the ! thou hast enterprysed a grete folye whan thou passest the see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

Ganellon reports the result of the message to Charles. (5439)

who divides his army into 10 divisions, and prepares for battle. (5453)

Richard leads the vanguard. (5455)

and Charles himself the rear. (5457)

Balan bids Brullant to attack the French first with 100,000 men. (5459)

Brullant rides out and challenges Charles. (5471)

¹ i viij. back, col. 2.

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf. And ¹wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thadmyral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Themperour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a furey ⁴ he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, & attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoy's brake, and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a ⁸ turke kynge of pyetree, and smote hym in the breste that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd; for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At ¹² that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that were lyuyng were lette by them that were dede. ¹⁶ Thenne emonge the paynyms there was a turke, named Tenebres, which cam makynge grete bruyt vpon the frensshe men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & ²⁰ smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth huon, and guernyer thauncyen, and after sayd to the frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub- ²⁴ gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of ²Normandy had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, & attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his hawberke, and brake his shelde in quarters, & so smote ²⁸ hym, that he fyl down deed wythout ony more reprochyng & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssaunce, whyche ³² was accompanied wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote. Anone a messenger came to the admyral, & tolde hym

Charles charges
at him,

and slays him,
(5485)

and afterwards
many more of the
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a
Saracen king,
makes great
havoc amongst
the French,
(5523)

but is himself
slain by Richard.

The French force
the pass,
and approach
Balan's division.
(5568)

¹ k j.

² k j, col. 2.

how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys
 companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe,
 & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost specyal
 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe
 frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion
 to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles
 the kyng. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded
 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone;
 & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght
 slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I
 deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I
 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consyderynge thastate
 of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng
 hym.

Balan determines
 to seek out and
 engage Charles in
 single combat.

¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant
 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer,
 and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles
 and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men:
 capitulo xiiij

20 **B**Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste
 rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armed,
 and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete
 of body, well membred, & had hys berde hangyng to
 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do
 sowne hys trompettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, &
 made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shote
 wyth bowes turquoys, & al furyously that one ayenst
 28 the other goo shote, and make mortal warre, so that the
 shotte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche
 people was there slayn that the wayes were empossed
 & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed
 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was
 kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with-
 out faynyng, that hys shelde auaylled hym not; hys

A general engage-
 ment ensues,

and the slaughter
 is immense.
 (5518)

Reyner attacks
 and slays
 Sortibrant.

Balan grieves
over the death of
Sortibrant.

He charges into
the French,

and slays Huon of
Milan and 20
others. (5574)

Ganelon and his
friends make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued
by Ganelon.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there
deed lyke a beest; & after, wyth hys swerde made so
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, þat it was 4
meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of
Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte
in a rage, and sythe sayd: "O Sortybrant, my special
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8
venge not thy deth." with thyse wordes he maað his
hors to renne vpon þ^e frenssh men so despytously that
whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyð grete dom- 12
mage, and fought that tyme so strongely, that he put to
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche
valyantly, sayeng: ¶ "O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I
shal lede away with me the kynge Charles with his
florissched berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes." &
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in
suche wyse þat they dyð gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & þat lygnage, dyð
gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynims.
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, ²attayned 28
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he
took hym, & layed hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued hym,
notwythstondyng that many of theym were slayn and
dede. Neuertheles the frensshe men surmounted the

¹ k j, back, col. 2.

² k ij.

paynyns, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which
for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dys-
comfytüre of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth
4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than fyfty
other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare
hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that
durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays
more than 50
Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in
the toure came oute whan they sawe the
hoost, & how thadmyral was taken &
holden prysonner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynyns & frensshe men, alwaye perseuer-
yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende,
eche one of other, For the multytude of the pay-
nyns was so grete that they myzt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan ¹the barons that were in the tour sawe the fayt,
& that they that kepte the toure were goon to the
socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche
took an hors of them pat were dede, which ranne at al

The French
knights, seeing
the battle, sally
out, and seizing
each a stray
horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond,
& sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh
them to the frensshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that
the moost hardyest of the paynyns gaf them waye, &

charge the Sara-
cens, and force
their way through
them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he
smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at
thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyne
of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan
28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng
them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde
them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse
pat the other put them to flight : for there was neuer
32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þ^e sperhawke than the
sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

scattering them
like larks before
the hawk. (5550)

¹ k ij, col. 2.

4

hys destructyon by the comyng' of the peres that were
in þ^e toure, & cryed wyth an h[y]e voys: "mahon, my
Balan invokes his
god Mahon (5560) god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to
so moche honour, thou hast forgotten¹ me! Remembre 4
with threats. me now! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the
bothe flankes,² hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,
fals recreaunt god that thou art." he thus sayeng, he
He is unhorsed
and taken
prisoner, (5647) was so pursyewed and smyton that he fyl down vnder 8
his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of
hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduysed
to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &
and the battle
ends. (5681) bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12
took an ende; and he that wold not be conuerted was
incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme
were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men
wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys 16
barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial
his neuw rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,
& were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd ne
There is great
rejoicing over the
safety of the
knights. (5670) expressed the Ioye that was emonge them; & the con- 20
solacyon & reiocyng' of kyng' charles was Inestymable.
Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend
to them, & of theyr daungers and leopardyes whiche
they had escaped, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24
had endured, wherfore Charles and many other wept for
pyte. And thys endured many dayes, there where as
The army rests
some days to
recruit their
strength. the hurt men & seek were heeled, & they that were
hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28
Loye.

³¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-
cyon that was shewed' to hym, wold not
be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32
goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

¹ orig. forygotten.² k ij, back.³ k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she quene of that contreye :
capitulo xv

- 4 **W**Han charles had al appeased, he took ballant Charles sends for Balan, (5719)
the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to
hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures
resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer
loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche,
8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue
honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe;
& al that therein enhabyteth. Wherefore by good ryght
he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon
12 is comprysed in hym which gyueth fayth and hope
in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of
mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson
ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not
16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Where-
fore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the
preseryng of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou
take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons,
20 & byleue in the holy Trynitye, fader, sone, ¹and holy
ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the
sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader
adam, descended in to thy world, and took humanitye
24 in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was
al pure and wythoute spotte. And byleue in the
artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comande-
mentes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and
28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy
hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes
of helle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys
body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy
32 baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other
sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shalt
be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes."

and, declaring the
evil and folly of
idolatry,

calls on him to
forsake it,

and to believe in
God, (5724)

and the articles of
the Christian
faith.

He recounts
Christ's crucifix-
ion, resurrection,
and ascension,

and says that if
he will be con-
verted, nothing
shall be taken
from him. (5722)

¹ k iij.

Balan swears he
will never forsake
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens
him with death.
(5756)

Fierabras inter-
cedes for his
father, who
agrees to be
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-
pared, (5789)

but Balan spits in
it, and nearly
kills the bishop,
(5809)

who is saved by
Ogier.

Fierabras again
intercedes for
Balan, (5813)

but Floripas urges
Charles to put
him to death at
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue
Mahon. Temperour holdyng¹ a naked swerd, sayd to
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seying² thys, kneled³ down to
herthe, & prayed⁴ hys fader to do as the emperour had
sayd. Thadmyral fered⁵ the deth, & sayd that he was
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth ¹fayr water in
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.
& after, whan thadmyral was vneladde, the bysshop 12
demaunded⁶ hym, sayeng⁷: "Syr ballant, forsake ye
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your
trespaces? and⁸ byleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of
the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshop,
& wold haue drowned⁹ hym in the fonte, and had
plonged¹⁰ hym therin, ne had not Ogier haue been, 20
whyche letted¹¹ hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abashed¹²
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24
Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frende, Ye see that your
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the outrage that
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel pacyence,
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the doughter of the Admyrall, seeyng¹³ 32
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore ²delaye ye so moche
to put thys deuyl to deth? I retche not though

¹ k iij, col. 2.

² k iij, back.

- he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye
of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a
good cristen man, & were baptysed and byleued in
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his
12 fader: "O moost dier fader, I praye you to be better
aduyse, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as
themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng¹ is but gold &
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make
frendes."
- 20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!
I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere agoon,
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is
24 arysen fro deth¹ to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys
28 playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon
themperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vn-
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys
32 heed, & Fyerabras pardonned hym gladly. Thenne
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he shold
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene fyr and guy of
bourgoyne. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

Fierabras re-
proves her for her
unfilial conduct,
(5828)

and implores his
father to consent
to be a Christian.
(5828)

Balan calls him a
fool, and declares
he will never do
so. (5843)

Charles asks who
will kill the
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,
and smites off his
head. (5865)

¹ k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty,

and especially
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is
not changed.
Guy and Floripas
are married,

and crowned king
and queen of
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ "Syr, ye remembre wel what
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to
hyr." Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was
despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She
beyng there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whyche was 8
ryght whyte and wel formed, so playsaunt and amerouse
for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man
merueylled. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two
sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12
standyng in ¹the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;
hyr heyr shynyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16
accumyled that it henge bynethe hyr ²knees; hyr mouth
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a
smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and
so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and
enflammed theyr entencyon wyth concupyscence, and
specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24
auncyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned
for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptysed. And
charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,
wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them,
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32
And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras
wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all ³that

¹ k iijj.

² orig. knees.

³ k iijj, col. 2.

¹euer guye shold^t haue, he shold^t holde it of charles.
 After thys, the feest of the weddyng^t and espousaylles The wedding
festivities last
8 days. (5918)
 endured^t viij dayes. And charles abode there two
 4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel
 assured^t.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to
 themperour, and how they were proued'
 8 by miracle, & of the retournyng' of
 Charles, and of the ende of thys book.
 [capitulo xvj]

12 **C**harles dyd suche dyligence in aygremore and in
 the contreye adiacent, that he that wold^t not be
 baptysed was put to deth, and so serched^t oueral.
 And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and
 sayd^t to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue Charles reminds
Floripas of all he
had done for her,
(5923)
 16 crowned^t you and maad^t you quene of thys contree. I haue
 accomplysshed^t your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,
 your husbond^t, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in
 waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest
 20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he
 and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And
 I shal leue with hym xx M^t of my subgetes, to the
 ende that the paynyns be alwaye in drede; but ye
 24 haue not yet shewed² to me nothyng^t of the holy
 relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd^t: "Syr
 emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and
 thenne she brouzt forth the chest in whyche they were
 28 honestly. and calls on her
to produce the
sacred relics.
(5931)

¶ Themperour kneled^t down on bothe hys knees, and
 enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop
 to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd^t. And fyrst
 32 he shewed^t the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu
 Cryst was crowned^t wyth, whyche was of pryckyng
Floripas brings
him the coffer
containing them,
(5936)
which Turpin
reverently opens.

¹ orig. ener.

² k iij, back.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5950)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5954)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hye in the ayer, & wythdrewe hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the ¹peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes² & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode ³in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng: ¶ "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makyng the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpoos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawn he took hede of hys gloue, &

¹ orig. peyle. ² orig. haudes. ³ k iij, back, col. 2.

- retorned and sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale
 pyeces of the sayd relyques were,—abode hangyng¹ in
 thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne remains miracu-
 lously suspended
 in the air
- 4 ¹was this myracle seen euydently, and al thys was
 shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles
 they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they for an hour. (6002)
 were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon
- 8 in byleuyng² & adouryng the sayd relyques. And these
 thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnder-
 stonden in the best partye & sygnifycacion that I can
 or wold say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that
- 12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng¹. And as for the
 book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles,
 and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I
 haue tofore spoken al alonge.

- 16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche con- The contents of
 the third book.
 teyneth two partyes, by the chapytres
 folowyng declared¹.

- ¶ The fyrst partye of the thyrd book con-
 20 teyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the
 warres made in spayne, and of two mer-
 uayllous geauntes.

- ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered² to Charles,
 24 and how, by the moyen and the conduyte
 of the sterres, he went in to galyce, &
 what cytees he subdued : ca. j

- ² Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken
 28 **C**moche payne for to mayntene the name of god
 for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al
 the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he
 had gotten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

Charles wishes
 after all his
 labours to rest
 from fighting,

¹ k v.² k v, col 2.

and to devote
himself to
religion;

but in a vision he
sees a line of
stars,

pointing to
Galicia.

A man appears to
him,

who declares he
is St. James,
the Apostle of
Galicia,

and reproaches
him for not
recovering that
country from the
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a
contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng^r his maker of þ^e grace
that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng^r hys enemyes.
Neuertheles on a nyght it happed^r hym that he byhelde 4
the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng^r
alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they
began at the see of fryselond^r in passyng^r bytwene
alemayn and^r ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and^r guyanne, 8
And passed ryght the sayd^r sterres by gascoyne, bascle,
Nauarre, and^r espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys
puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd^r and^r maa^d
crysten. And after, the ende of the sayd^r sterres thus 12
goyng in ordre, cam ynto galyce, where-as the body of
the holy appostle was, he nat knowyng^r the propre
place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the
sayd^r sterres, and^r thought moche contynuelly what thys 16
myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In
one nyght emonge the other that¹ charles thought on
thys waye, a man appyered^r to hym in vysyon, whyche
was so fayr, so playsaunte, and^r so shynyng^r, that it was 20
meruaylle; whyche sayd^r to hym: "what doost thou,
my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng^r al rauysshed, answerd^r:
"who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd^r: "I
am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24
Zebedee, and^r propre broder of saynt Iohan the euan-
gelyst, & am he whom god^d chaas to preche the crysten
fayth and^r hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and^r of
galylee, by hys holy grace, and^r he whom herode dyd^r 28
put to deth by swerde; and^r my body abydeth emonge
the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated^r it vylaynsly, &
lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I mer-
ueylle that thou hast not conquerd^r my londe, Seen and^r 32
consyderyd^r that thou hast conquerd^r so many regyones,
townes, & cytees in the world. wherfore I do the to
wete, that lyke as god^d hath chosen the, and made the

¹ k v, back.

superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges
 & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse among al them that
 lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the
 mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And
 to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what ¹place
 thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the
 8 sterres by dyuine magnyfycence. And for to obteyne
 the more loye & gretter glorye in heuen, by haultayn
 and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-
 myes, & in that same place thou sha[^l]t make and doo
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come
 the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &
 pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue
 vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and
 16 ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conserue the
 place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys
 maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour
 Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of
 20 god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he
 dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after
 took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the
 sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst
 24 in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym
 was panpylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl
 and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he
 abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to
 do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he
 went, ²that in the vertu of hys name he myght take
 that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god,
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree
 for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysse
 and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy
 saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

as God wishes
him.

He promises
him success,
and bide him raise
a church to his
name,

as a perpetual
memorial.

After this vision
had appeared
thrice,

Charles starts
with his army for
Galicia.

He besieges Pam-
peluna in vain for
three months,

and then invokes
in prayer the help
of St. James.

¹ k v, back, col. 2.

² k vj.

Journeye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleuyng¹ peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnynge may the better determyne the ende of myn entencyon." 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had fynysshed his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces; and after, charles and his hoost entred in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold be baptysed & byleue in god wythoute fyctyon, was saued and put a-parte, and who sayd the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, turned in to Ruynes at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradycyon came and yelded them to the mercy of kyng charles. And thus many were baptysed, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned, and al the contreye reduced to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelite of the emperour charles, and brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute any other gaynsayng in sygne of seynourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, & how somme were by hym destroyed.
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

After that charles had the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd hys deuocyon, and made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in þ^e lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and there fyxed 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called petronium; & thanked god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute any contradycyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no ferther. And in that londe who that wold byleue

at a place called Petronium.

¹ k vj, col. 2.

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who
 that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after
 Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he
 4 gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete
 townes & stronge, emonge whome ¹was onsea, in which
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that
 had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was
 dyscyppe of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllyng.

He captures 13
 cities in Galicia,
 and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,
 the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe
 of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not
 wyne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he
 layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not
 wyne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte
 onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that ²the walles fyl
 down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche
 wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therin after, and after it
 32 sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water,
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes, alle blacke.
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij
 that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

the whole of
 which was subject
 to him.

He besteges
 Lucerne for 4
 months,
 but in vain,

and then prays to
 St. James,

when the walls
 fall down, and
 the city is taken,

and turned into a
 lake containing
 black fishes.

¹ k vj, back.

² k vj, back, col. 2.

therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursd, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij 8

Charles destroys
all the idols;

but at Salancadys
was a great idol,

kept so by devils
that none could
destroy it,

and which no
Christian dare
approach.

It stood on a
large stone,
richly carved,

WHan Charles had doon in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thydolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12 Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was¹ the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomete in the tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahomet² in 16 thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuynge coude by 20 strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24 the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28 vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylly of grete and rych facyon, the whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete 32 crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

¹ orig. and was.

² k vij.

- grete, & alway vpward it was lasse; and that stone was so hye as a crowe myght flee: vpon whyche stone was thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorie, after thas-
4 semblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, & had hys face turned to the south, & helde in his ryght honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefed¹ for trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne,
8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle the keye, whych shold be a sygne pat the kyng of fraunce shold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme
12 that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,
16 and precyous stoonnes, in therth, by cause the crysten men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of the kyng.

and was of fine ivory,

and held in his hand a key,

which was to fall when a king should come to subdue the country.

On the approach of Charles the key falls.

- 20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce, and of dyuers other whyche Kyng Charles founded: capitulo iiij

- 24 Charles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte Of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Charles, having an immense quantity of gold and silver,

- ¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd of the townes and contreyes of Spayne² aforesayd. Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and
32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng, and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

builds a church to St. James,

and ordains a bishop

¹ k vij, col. 2.

² k vij, back.

and three canons. founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of
 saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordeyned
 He endows the church, for them rentes & trybutes suffycient, and gaf to them
 and supplies vestments and ornaments. singuler seynourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4
 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of
 precyous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apper-
 teynyng^t in a chyrche pontyfycal. also of bokes, vesty-
 mentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And qf 8
 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of
 spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng.
 ¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed,
 he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it 12
 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche
 of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche
 of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche
 of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt 16
 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounte of
 martres. & aboue the chyrches aforesayd, he founded,
 rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes,
 & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20
 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had
 taken spayne & put to deth the crysten
 people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24
 maters: capitulo v

After Charles's
 return to France,

Aigolant, an
 African giant,
 reconquers Spain,
 and puts the
 Christians to
 death.

AFTER that charles was retorneð in to Fraunce, a
 kyng^t sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth
 grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28
 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had
 left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth,
 and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynges
 came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32
 & angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.

¹ k vij, back, col. 2.

wherfore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour
4 of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland. & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, ¹and
8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys
12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng thenten-
16 cyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred
ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by
20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two
24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ^e sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrð day after, Aygolant maað certeyn experyences,
28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles ²was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and
32 specyally charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knyghts,

who slay the 100 Saracens ;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

¹ k viij.

² k viij, col. 2.

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there
 theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of
 saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after
 was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a 4
 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in
 the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed
 grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and
 be gloryfied marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8
 speres on þ^e morn were founden al grene, floressed
 and leued, whyche was a precedent sygne that they
 whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.
 ¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12
 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-
 rotated, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,
 whyche stondeth there yet. It was grete meruayle of
 the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16
 deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche
 was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt¹ crysten men
 were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne duc
 Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20
 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a
 fote he maad grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse,
 and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the
 euenyng, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of 24
 surete. And as it was the wyll of our lord, the next
 day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse
 of ytalye, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng
 men & chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe 28
 of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewe hym ouer the
 see toward hys contree. but they myzt not for hast bere
 with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was
 enryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32
 ¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng he came
 wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and theene, duryng
 seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of
¹ k viij, back.

By a miracle it is
 shown which of
 the French
 soldiers should be
 killed in the
 battle.

From their spears
 springs up a great
 wood.

Mlio and 50
 knights are slain,

but the Saracens
 are put to flight.

Reinforcements
 come to Charles,

whereupon Algo-
 lant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to
 France,

the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in this man. For whan it was
 4 not warre for to mynysse thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd ¹reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy
 8 marters in establysshynge theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of this kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone
 12 derked thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that this Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupies himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and' how Charles in habyte dys-symyled' spake to hym, and' of other
 20 maters: capitulo vj

AS I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to his contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his
 24 purpoos, but maad grete dylygence for to assemble his people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of
 28 arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of ²maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

¹ k viij, back, col. 2.

² l j.

Aigolant invites
Charles to visit
him unattended.

Charles sets out
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,
except 40,
near the city.

He himself, in
disguise and with
only one attend-
ant, enters the
city,

and presents him-
self as a messenger
from Charles,

to say he had
come with only
40 attendants.

Aigolant replies
that he will go
and meet the
French king.

trustly, with a few peple, promysyng¹ to hym for to
gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-
cious stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this
paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4
his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he
wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe
hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng
charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8
peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour
and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle
nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore
named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a 12
mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl
knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte,
by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were de-
parted, soo that he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16
vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and
took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a
messenger, and ¹took one knyght onely with hym,
whyche bare his spere & swerde and bocler vnder hys 20
mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was
brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was
tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng
hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24
he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied
wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to
doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes,
withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysshe and holde 28
that thou hast promysed." Aigolant sayd to hem that
they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say
to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and
he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32
had knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne,
for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer
it whan he shold come ageyn, & sawe al the kynges

¹ 1 j, col. 2.

forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorned to his
 peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, & after
 came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,
 4 accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them
 withoute taryeng. But charles took hede whan he cam
 that there were many moo paynys than crysten men,
 and ¹wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-
 8 parted, and retorned in to fraunce wythout hauyng
 other delyberacyon.

Charles, having
 spied out all the
 city, departs.

Aigolant, with
 7000 men, follows
 him,

but Charles
 escapes.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche
 peple, retorned in to the place aforesayd &
 12 toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :
 [capitulo] vij

16 **A**fter that charles was retorned in to fraunce he
 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte
 of agenne, & assyeged it there by grete facyon,
 the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &
 many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis
 & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan
 20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his companye sawe þat
 they myght not endure, they maað hooles & caues vnder
 therth for tescape oute secretly : in that maner they came
 out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by
 24 the cyte, named goronna, and so they saued them self.
 The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-
 ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete
 tryumphe & puyssaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to
 28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,
 seyng that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant
²was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it
 he came thyder & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer
 32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so
 doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a

Charles assembles
 a large army,

and lays siege to
 Agenne, which he
 surrounds.

Aigolant and his
 lords escape by
 mines.

Charles enters the
 city,

and after besieges
 the city to which
 Aigolant had fled.

¹ 1 j, back.

² 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes
a general battle.

Those of the
Christians who
were destined to
die are again
pointed out by a
miracle.

The Saracens are
utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wyne the bataylle shold be lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel thalabout & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4 crysten men plantēd theyr speres in the grounde, especially they that on the morn sholdē deye, & obteyne the crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morne they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8 & ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche Ioyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god. After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12 bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; & that tyme the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16 and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the kynge of Agabye [&] the kyng of bugye, merueyllous myghty sarasyna.

¶ Of the vertuous operations that charles 20 made whan he was retorned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in hys companye, & of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij

After his defeat
Aigolant flies to
Pampeluna.

Charles returns
to France for
reinforcements.

He bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24 came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28 people, and made an open maundement thorough out al Fraunce that al maner people that were of euyl condycyon and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32 be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe, that wold goo with

- hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysonners that were in fraunce, he delyuerd them al out of pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonneed them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good largely, & them that were euyl clad, he clothed them 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he peased them & accorded; Alle them pat were dys-heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al to them; Alle þe peple¹ that myght bere armes he 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indygnacyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed for the loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, & 16 made pees with euery man. and thenne he was fournysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng, wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innumerable. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles, 20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: "I, Turpyn, archebyssshop of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good courage to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns, with myn owne handes." ¶ Wyth Charles was 24 Roulland of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys systre, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure thousand fyghtyng men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng men: Aristagius, 28 kyng of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng men; Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng, Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Augustus Cezar had ordeyned, wyth the byturyciens, the 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes, cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam with iij M horsmen ²good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng of bordeloyes, with iiij M men; Salamon, felow of estok;

He frees all
prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the
disinherited,

and raises the
esquires to
knighthood,
on condition of
joining his army.

Turpin assures
him of success.

With Charles are
Roland, Oliver,
and Aristagius
with 14,000 men.

Besides were men
from Guienne,

¹ 1 ij, col. 2.

² 1 ij, back.

Burgundy,

Lorraine, and
other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of banyere, wyth x M fyghtyng men; Hoel of Nautes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4 lorayne, & many other; and Charles had of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excercyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyng of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the frensshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more. 12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore aygolant was not baptysed: capitulo ix

Aigolant, fright-
ened at the num-
bers of the French,proposes a con-
ference.It is agreed to
leave the question
of religion to a
trial of arms
between equal
numbers.

THe whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16 lerned at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold. Aygolant, thys geaunt and grete Lord, coude not abstayne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was ¹maad bytwene them. For Aygolant consyderyd the multytude of hys people and the puyssaunces of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the 24 crysten peple, but he thought that the god of crysten people was more certayn and trewe than the god of the paynmys; but er he wold declyne fro the worshypping of hys goddes, he had desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynmys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold obteyne the vycторыe vpon others peple, that his god were holden and worshypped, 32 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle

¹ 1 ij, back, col. 2.

- shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.
- And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten
 knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynymys. And anone
 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty
 sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst
 fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-
 quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but
 8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thougt he
 wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and
 anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. ^{1¶} Thys
 geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys
 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a
 thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyth-
 oute makyng grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone
 slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by
 16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of
 crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn
 than the lawe of the paynymys and sarasyns, and thus he
 was enclyned to the crysten fayth, & dysposed hym to
 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and
 here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &
 come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good
 hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was
 24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and
 hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were
 vayllerous and soo grete as it was in armes and in
 bataylles. And also he came pryncypally for to be
 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete
 magnifycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple
 and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and
 grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;
 32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and
 the cause of theyr estate, and after ²that he sawe
 in a parte of y^e halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij
 poure persones, which dyed & ete as other dyd. for

20 Christians
engage as many
Saracens, and
slay them;

and after 40 over-
come 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000
Christians slay
1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is con-
vinced, and agrees
to receive baptism.

He asks to see
Charles at meat
with his lords.

He sees 12 poor
men, sitting on
the ground at
dinner,

¹ 1 iij.

² 1 iij, col. 2.

and asks who and what they are.

Charles tells him they are maintained in memory of our Lord and His Apostles.

Aigolant reproves Charles for treating his lords so much better than the servants of God,

and refuses to be baptised.

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiiij poure men in the worshypp of our lord and of his xij appostles, & he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4 habyte, & dyned al soroufully, & he demaunded what people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij appostles 8 that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aigolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl hys lord y^t receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the seruantes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed ayenst y^e colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his mes- 16 sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good & holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe." & herof aigolant was all moeued & troubled 20 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro hys purpose, toke leue of the ¹kyng & retourned to hys peple, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y^e morne more 24 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aigolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28 founden dede by myracle: [ca.] x

Charles is enraged,

WHan charles sawe Aigolant come for to baptysse hym he was moche Ioyous, but whan he returned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

¹ l iij, back.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour remembred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylled not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to 12 fyght ¹ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns, that the crysten men were empresshed and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore² Aygolant, seying the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothyng to deye, aduanced³ so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therein.

and has all these poor men clothed and honourably treated.

A great battle takes place,

in which the Saracens are defeated,

and Aigolant himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of cordube saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After 24 thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed retourned, And whan they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng 28 of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

The kings of Seville and of Cordova fall on the Christians laden with booty, and kill more than 1000,

¶ Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupyscence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vycorye, and to god displaysaunte. ¶ On the morne tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

from which we may see the danger of covetousness.

¹ l iij, back, col. 2.

² *orig.* wherforr.

³ *orig.* and aduanced.

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and
prays to God to
point out which
of the Christians
are destined to
die.

This being shown
to him,

he locks them up
in his chapel,

and goes to battle
without them.

On his return he
finds them all
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce ¹of Nauarre
named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue
batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt,
& so trustyng¹ in god, whan he faught for the crysten 4
fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of
bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles
put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that
it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold deye in 8
that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery
man was armed for to fyght, by the wyll of our lord
Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle
rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnois. 12
whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had com-
passyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of
theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare
thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16
after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold
not take deth that day; and thenne wyth al his other
hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it
was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed 20
and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour
came in to hys oratorye vycoryous vpon hys enemyes,
and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede &
expyred, & thenne knewe² he wel that alle they that 24
were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to
be receyued in to heuen with glorie & crowne of marter-
dom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge
theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put 28
hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is
not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce 32
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught
wyth hym: capitulo xj.

¹ 1 iijj.

² 1 iijj, col. 2.

- A**fter that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many
 kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges
 cam to the admyral of babyloune, the which had a
 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of
 golias, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M
 turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst
 charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubtet
 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte
 of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom
 & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to
 fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,
 12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne
 other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl ¹ myghty
 men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges
 of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his
 16 watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knowen this
 geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn-
 gular persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer
 had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogier the
 20 danoy. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the
 felde, without makyng of any semblaunte of warre, he
 came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande &
 put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym ony
 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put
 hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym,
 than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght
 of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face
 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes &
 thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was
 thre palmes longe. After that Ogier was borne thus
 awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus
 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lightly as the other.
 Charles was abashed and sent tweyne other, that is to
 wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt
 took that one wyth ² the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of
 Babylon sends
 Ferragus, a mar-
 vellous giant,

to fight against
 Charles.

He challenges any
 French knight.

Charles sends
 Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus
 takes him under
 his arm and

carries him off,
 as a wolf would a
 lamb.

Charles then
 sends Raynold,
 and he also is
 carried off.

Then Constayn
 and Hoel are sent,

¹ 1 iijj, back.

² orig. wyght.

but Ferragus
carries them off,
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave
to fight the giant.

Charles reluct-
antly gives his
consent.

Ferragus lifts
Roland up with
one hand, and
lays him on his
horse before him.

Roland, by an
effort, overthrows
the giant.

Roland kills the
Saracen's horse,

and wounds
Ferragus in the
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them ¹bothe tweyne in-to
pryson in to hys lodgyngⁱ, that euery man myght see.
yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they
were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or 4
contradyc^{ti}on. whan Charles saw the feet of this man,
he was al abashed^d, & durst nomore sende ony persone.
For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland^d, whyche
was prynce of al thexcersyte of Charles, was euyl con- 8
tente of thys that the geaunt was vyc^toryous, & came
to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth
hym, but charles wold^d not graunte hym. At the last,
by force, he was constraind^d to gyue to hym lycence, 12
& Roulland^d made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus;
but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght
hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore
hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was 16
taken & borne awaye soo vylaynsly he took a grete²
courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to
help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst
Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20
ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and
rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche
took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche
habylye and courageous, drewe ³hys swerde durandal 24
and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke
on the Paynmys hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the
myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus,
beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28
hys swerde for to smyte Rolland^d, & had^d slayne hym
wyth the stroke yf he had attayned^d hym; but assone
as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland^d,
Roulland^d auanced^d hym self and smote the geant vpon 32
the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a
stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof
Feragus had^d grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

¹ l iij, back, col. 2.

² orig. gtete.

³ l v.

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in
 suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe
 two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght
 4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuely, tyl the
 houre of none: wherefore they bothe were wery, and
 took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,
 and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute
 8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys
 lodgys.

Roland's horse is
 killed.

Being both weary,
 they leave off
 fighting for the
 day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus
 foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by
 12 what ¹moyen Feragus was slayn by Roul-
 land': capitulo xij

THe next day folowyng' erly, Rolland' and' Feragus
 came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt
 16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng
 worth, for rolland' made prouysyon of a grete staffe or
 clubbe, ry3t longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;
 but he myght nowher hurte hym. & also he smote
 20 hym with grete stones and' rounde, & coude in noo
 wyse hurte, ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this
 maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-
 day. The geaunt was wery, and' demaunded tryews of
 24 Rolland' for to slepe and' reste hym a lytel. Rolland
 was contente, and' was so noble and' so valyaunt, that
 whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete
 stone and' layed it vnder hys heed, to the ende that he
 28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And
 after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,
 he satte vp. And the noble Rolland' came and sat by
 hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy
 32 feat, How thou art so stronge and' so terryble that thou
 mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,

Next morning the
 duel is renewed.

Roland takes with
 him only a great
 staff.

At noon Ferragus
 is tired, and
 wishes to sleep a
 while.

Roland makes
 him comfortable.

He asks him how
 it is he cannot
 by any means
 wound him.

Ferragus tells him
that he is vulner-
able only in the
navel.

The Saracen
inquires about
the doctrines of
Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all
that are baptised
shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes
to settle the ques-
tion of religion by
arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in¹ ²noo wyse." The
geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : " I may
not be alayn, but by the nauell." whan Rolland herde
that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4
After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,
and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym :
" I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the
ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8
what lawe he helde. Rolland answered : " I holde the
cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :
" what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it ? " to
whyche Roulland answered : " It is trouthe y^t after god 12
almyȝty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader
adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaunde-
ments ; the world was Juge here in erthe wythoute
hauyng^t of beatytude, ne of felycyte : and long tyme 16
after the sone of god, the second persone of the Tryn-
yte, remembreth hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche
is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and
took our humanyte and suffred greuous passyon of 20
paynes. And he beyng^t in this world hath gyuen en-
seygnements and stablyssed constytucyons for to saue
vs, & pryncypally who byleueth in hym. & in hys
werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed, After this 24
³mortal lyf he shal be saued in heuen : and, loo ! this
is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."
And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-
tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answered to 28
hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this
manere : " thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the
fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym,
& holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs twayne that 32
shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be
holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of
hym that is vycctorious late it be holden for good &

¹ orig. im.

² l v, back.

³ l v, back, col. 2.

trewē, and that it be enterly kepte and obserued."

The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, & accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to

Roland agrees.

4 fyght. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Feragus lyft

The fight is renewed.

vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malyciously, and Roulland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde,

8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym

Roland's staff is cut in two,

doun vnder hym. Rolland, consyderyng that he myght not flee ne escape, he called in hys hert deuoutely the

12 name of Ihesus, and yelded hym to god & ¹to the

vyrgyn marye: & he anon reprysed suche strengthe & myght that he aroos a lytel, & myghtly repugned the

but by a great effort he gets the giant under him

geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte

16 vnder hym, and thenne moche quykly and subtylly he

sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that

and stabs him in the navel.

he myght to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte

20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye & lowde,

that alle they that were in that place were aferd &

abashed of hys crye, & he sayd: "O Mahomet, my

god, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour

24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger."

with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and

The Saracens bear Ferragus away.

bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they

coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland was

28 comen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth

Charles assaults the town,

the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns

that bare Feragus, and entred in to the cyte, and so

takes it and

moche dyd that the geaunt was dede, and after came

32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and took out Ogyer,

releases his knights.

Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

¹ l vi.

¶ How Charles went to Cor¹dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon :

ca.

xij 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches against them.

The Saracens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

A fter thys aforesayd, the kyng' Corbude and the kyng' of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad a moche subtyl and wylde thynga. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had vysieres counter-12 feyted all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylles, for to deceyue the crysten men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disrengre & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couerd theyr eyen wyth clothes, And stopped theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold not see ne ²here the sarasyns dysguyseed & countrefayted. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed, For they had a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and make grete empeeshement to theyr enemyes. And this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon³ stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

¹ l vj, col. 2.

² l vi, back.

³ orig. thre-vpon.

aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherefore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to
 4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y^e paynyns were slayn and dede.
 & on the morne after the towne was delyuerd vnto
 8 Charles by the lord of the toun,¹ whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne
 12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was ²alwaye vycoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also
 16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was
 20 halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and' of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

CCharles the noble emperour, after that he had
 24 put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,
 28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and
 32 bannysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

¹ orig. tonn.

² l vj, back, col. 2.

and ordains that
all the bishops of
Spain shall be
subject to the
bishop of St.
James.

Turpin conse-
crates the Church
of St. James.

Charles appoints
the payment of
tithes to the
church,

and orders that
all consecrations
and coronations
shall take place
there.

The body of St.
John is deposited
on the right side,
and that of St.
James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytucyons,¹
synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and
vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt ²Iames he
made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, 4
prynces, and kynges dwellyngt in spayne, shold^t all be
subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold^t
owe to that chyrche fydeyte, wyth al the peple of the
londe of galyce. And accordyng^t to the same the arche- 8
bisshop Turpyn wryteth in thys manere: "And I,
Turpyn, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the same place,
where the ordenaunces aforesayd^t were maad^t. And I,
accompanied^t wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good^t 12
lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the
moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed^t, dedycat^t, blessyd^t, and
consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the aluter of
the same. And after thenne the kyng Charles gaf al 16
the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And
after ordeyned y^t euery hous of spayn and galyce shold^t
gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the
money corraunt for annuel³ trybute. And by the 20
moyen therof they shold^t be franke and free of seruy-
tude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he estab-
lysshed^t that the chyrche of the sayd^t place shold^t be
sayd apostolyque for thexaltacion of the place. And 24
more ouer, that the bysshoppryches and specyal dygnyte
of alle spayne & of galyce, ⁴and semblably the coro-
nacions of kynges of al the contre, shold^t be crowned^t &
sacred^t by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse 28
as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of
ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuan-
gelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. &
thus Saynt Iohan was lodged^t in the ryght syde, And 32
Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne
was accomplisshed the peticyon of their moder and of

¹ *orig.* constytucyous.

² 1 vij.

³ *orig.* amuel.

⁴ 1 vij, col. 2.

hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu
 Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte,
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,
 4 whyche was thenne accomplysshed and termyned. &
 therfore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches
 pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephe-
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of
 Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf any demaunded the
 cause of these thre places and syeges pryncipal of cris-
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apperente. These thre
 places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners
 may haue theyr recours to them. for tamende theyr
 lyues, and put lawaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardon
 16 and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Iohan, & saynt James, haue pre-
 ceded all the other in the companye of Ihesu Cryst
 whan he was in thys world, & haue ben called to hys
 20 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue
 conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honoured and to be
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preched at Rome, and there
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome
 is enhaunced & exalted aboue al other chyrches. &
 28 after saynt Iohan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in
 his souper, & in ephezym he made the gospel '*In
 principio erat verbum & cetera*,' And by his holy
 prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had
 grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys
 martredom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal world."

Thus the three
 chief churches in
 the world are
 those of Rome,
 Ephesus,
 and St. James,

because St. Peter,
 St. John, and St.
 James were the
 chief of the
 Apostles.

The church of
 Rome is the head,
 because there St.
 Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next,
 because there St.
 John wrote his
 Gospel,

and the church of
 St. James is third.

¹¶ The second' parte of the thyrd book con-
teyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the
treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth
of the pyeres of Fraunce.

4

¶ How the treason was comprysed' by Ganelon, and of the deth of crysten men, & how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour:
capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and Bellegandus, kings of Saragossa, pretend to be ready to submit to Charles.

Charles sends Ganelon, requiring them to be baptized and pay tribute.

The Saracens send presents to Charles, and induce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise to betray the French army.

IN this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the 12 whyche were vnder kyng Charles, & made to hym synge of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaundement holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepyon. Themperour, seyng that they were not crysten, and for 16 to gete seynourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptysse them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20 went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, ²and other 24 rychesses, & iiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28 in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer, sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of 32 charles yf he myght doo it.

¹ 1 vij, back, col. 2.

² 1 viij.

Thenne ganellon was surprysed wyth thys fals
 auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte
 that is in persones, for to haue gold^r or syluer & other
 4 rychesses, & made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the
 sarasyns for to betraye hys lord^r, hys neyghbours, &
 crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them
 of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon,
 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue¹ cause
 coloured^r ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains
 to betray Charles
 and his fellow-
 countrymen.

¶ O wycked^r Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse,
 & thou hast doon a werke vylaynious: thou were ryche
 12 & a grete lord^r, and for money thou hast betrayed^r thy
 mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to
 goo to y^e sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other,
 and for the fydelite that was thought in² the, thou
 16 hast consented^r to trayson, and^r allone hast commysed^r
 Infydelite. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of
 a fals wylle plunged^r in thabysme of auaryce? Thy
 naturel souerayn lord^r, Roulland^r, Olyuer, & the other,
 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked
 hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to
 destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou
 louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre?
 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capy-
 tain ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that
 thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende shew-
 eth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and
 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the
 is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god^d dys-
 obeysaunt, and^r the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put
 to vtire ruyn and destructyon. Thus in thys manere
 32 ganellon brought gold^r and^r syluer, wyn, wymmen, and
 other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed^r. Whan
 charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in
 good^d entent and^r equyte and^r wythout barat. The grete

The author's re-
 proach to Ganelon
 for his treachery,

for which he had
 no reason but
 avarice,

which had ruined
 so many.

Ganelon presents
 the presents to
 Charles,

who falls into the
 trap.

¹ orig. hane.

² l viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold
and silver himself,
and gives the
wine to his
knights.

Charles, per-
suaded by Gane-
lon, sends his
homewards.

Marsurius and
Bellegandus lay
an ambush in
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the
French.

The fight lasts all
day.

At night the
French soldiers
get drunk on the
wine.

Then 30,000 Sara-
cens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles
took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people
took the hethen wymmen. Themperour ¹ gaf consente
to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, 4
and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys
hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd
hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold
become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelite to 8
the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and
he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland
& Olyuer & the moost specyal of hys subgettes wyth a
thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounceyuale. 12
Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after
the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns
were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh
men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & 16
deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they
put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx
thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles
were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were 20
assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre
in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe
them; For fro the mornynge vnto the houre of tyerce
they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore 24
the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to
reste theym. Neuertheles, they ² dronken wel of the
good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And
after many of them that were dronke went & laye by 28
the wymmen sarasynnoys, & also wyth other that they
had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wyll of god
was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their
martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr 32
saucyon & purgynge of their synne. For anone after
the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the
second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuously

¹ 1 viij, back.

² 1 viij, back, col. 2.

that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, and slay all except Roland, Thierry, and Baldwin.
 bauldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede
 with speres: somme slayn, somme rosted, and other
 4 quartred, and submyse to many tormentes. And whan
 thys dyscomfytur was doon, Ganellon was with charles,
 and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng
 of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche
 8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to
 deth. ¶ Of the languysshe that was comyng to Charles,
 he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how
 12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-
 tally after that al his peple were slayn :
 capitulo : ij

16 ¹ **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche
 sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery,
 retourned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn
 moche fyers & blacke as boyled pytche, and anone he
 took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a Roland captures
a Saracen,
whom he ties to
a tree,
 20 tree straytely, wythoute doynge to hym any more harme,
 and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the
 hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were
 fledde: & saw grete quantyte of paynyns. Wherefore
 24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche
 lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred
 crysten men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo.
 And whan they were come to hym he retourned to the
 28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland
 helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,
 yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus, and afterwards
compels to point
out to him Mar-
surius.
 & yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn
 32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for
 to saue his lyf; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

The Saracen
points out Mar-
surius,

whom Roland
kills.

The Saracens fly
before him.

All the French
are killed, except
three.

Bellegandus and
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynims, and shewed to
 Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a
 rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt
 Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng¹ 4
¹veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus,
 as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he
 encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than any
 of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8
 durandal vpon the hede that he clefted hym & hys hors
 in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde &
 that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns
 were soo troubled and abaashed of the myght and pua- 12
 saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, &
 thenne abode the kyng Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke.
 Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came
 to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16
 the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in
 thys recountre were dolorously slayn & put to deth,
 Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere
 fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20
 slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in
 suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he
 was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with
 stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mor- 24
 tally. And not withstondyng these greuous hurte &
 woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out
 of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he
 myght. ²Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28
 that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people,
 retourned in to another contreye³, wyth hys peple moche
 hastely. And themperour Charles had thenne passed
 the montayne of Roncyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32
 these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

¹ m j, col. 2.

² m j, back.

³ orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely,
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde

4 durandal: capitulo iij

Rolland the valyaunt, and champyon of the crysten
fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by
cause they had noo socours; he was moche wery,
8 gretely abashed, & moche affebled in hys persone, for
he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal
woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt
for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete
12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel com-
memoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe
fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came
to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye,
16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron-
cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat
down ¹on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best
that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to
20 say as gyuyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr
& rychely made: the handle was of fyn beryle, shynyng
meruallously; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in
the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so
24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the
swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe & sawe it shyne
moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister
he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd
28 in thys maner pytously: ¶ "O swerd of valure, the
fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne
neuer fonde I the but good: thou art long by mesure;
Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou
32 barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauyour
of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power
of god. who may comprehend thy valure? Alas!

Roland, although
greatly exhausted
by loss of blood,

struggles nearly
to Saragoessa,

where he lies
down.

He looks with
grief on Durandal,

and weeping,
bids it farewell.

Roland laments
over his sword
Durandal.

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue good
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,
good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by 4
the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slayn by
the; the name of god is exalted by the; by the is
made the path of ¹sauement. O, how many tymes
haue I by the auenged thyniurye made to god! O, 8
how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort and my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12
of noo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye
for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte ynough, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded ² in hym self to breke it, 16
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng ony thyng the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and 20
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it
moche strongly, to the ende that yf there were ony
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore
they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred hys
sowle. Thenne, seying that none came, he sowned it
ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, 28
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the ³synewes
of his body stratched. And that noys or voys by the
grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blownen it, and
wold haue returned ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

Determined that
no Saracen shall
euer have it,

tries to break it
on a rock,

but Durandal
cleaves the rock
without harm to
itself.

Roland blows his
ivory horn so hard
that it breaks,

and the veins of
his neck burst.

Charles hears the
horn and recog-
nizes it,

¹ m ij.

² orig. concludet.

³ m ij, col. 2.

- whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourned hym, in
sayeng that Rolland had blowen his horne for somme
wylde beest that he chaced for his playsyr; For ofte
4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and
that he shold not doubte of nothyng. ¶ And thus he
dyd the kyng to vnderstonde that he byleued hym,
and made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-
8 land, leyng in thys sorowe, he peased hys woundes also
wel as he myght, and stratched hymself on the grasse
to the fresshenes for to forgeate hys thurst, whyche was
ouer greta. but Ganelon per-
suades him that
Roland is hunt-
ing.
- 12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym,
whyche was moche heuy and sorouful for hys brother
Roulland, whyche was in that necessyte. And anone
Roulland sayd to hym, "my frende and my brother,
16 I haue so greta thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue
not drynke to aswage my thurst. Roland stretches
himself on the
grasse.
- ¶ Baulduyn had greta payne in goyng here and there,
and coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &
20 sayde he coude fynde none; and in greta anguysshe he
lepte² on Roulandes hors, and rode for to fetcche charles,
For he knewe wel that rolland was nyghe hys deth.
Anone after came to hym Thyerry, duc of Ardayne,
24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland so contynuelly that he myzt
not speke. but with greta payne Rolland confessyd hym
and dysposed hym of hys consyence. neuertheles, that
same day Rolland had receyued the body of our lord,
28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that
day whyche they shold fyght were confessyd & comuned
wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway
were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by
32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &
hys hondes Ioyned, al stratched in the medowe, began
to say thus: "Fayre lord god, my maker, my redemour,
sone of the glorious moder of comforte, thou knowest
Roland asks for
water, but Bald-
win can find none,

and rides off to
fetcch Charles.

Roland confesses
himself,

and knowing his
end is near,

commends him-
self to God,

¹ m ij, back.

² orig. lefts

myn entency[o]n, thou knowest what I haue doon for
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of
 whyche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in
 through the the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4
 merite of Christ, and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the
 y^t tofore the thys day my faul^{tes}, synnea, and ygnor-
 aunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde
 to the trespaces that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed
 me, I beseche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12
 god^d omnypotent, wyth good wyll I departed oute of
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred
 and for the dan- many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16
 gers and troubles he has gone through for the
 Christian religion. & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy.
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good theef on the 20
 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrche: I byleue
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.
 He prays for the ¶ O good lord, I beseche the to pardoune & forgyue 28
 soules of his com- alle theym that thys day ben deed in ¹my companye,
 rades, & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I
 suffice, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

¹ m ij, back, col. 2.² m iij.

as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comforte my spyryte,
receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable."

- Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes
4 on hys body, holdyng' hys flesshe, and after sayd thre
tymes, ¶ "*Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem
meum,*" and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and
sayd, "*Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,* In thys
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these
eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,
12 the glorye whyche god hath maad redy to them that
loue hym; and in sayeng, "*In manus tuas, domine,
commendo spiritum meum,*" he layed hys armes vpon
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys
16 soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juyl.

Then he crosses
his hands on his
brest,

and saying, "Into
thy hands I com-
mend my spirit,"
expires.

- 1 ¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland',
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other
20 maters: capitulo iiij

- "**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebyssshop of
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceyuale, tofore
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete
28 melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wher-
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyng' a grete legyon of
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a
32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye.
whan they were tofore me in passyng', I sayd to them

"The day that
Roland died, I,
Turpin,

was celebrating
mass before
Charles,

and in the
'secret' I saw a
vision of black
spirits passing
with great noise,

and I asked them
who they were,

and they told me
of the deaths of
Marsurius and
Roland.

And I told the
vision to Charles,

and, while I was
speaking, came
Baldwin, and told
us of the slaughter
of our men.

And Charles
ordered the army
to return,

and he himself in
front found
Roland dead,

and he wept and
lamented over
him bitterly.

and demaunded who they¹ were, & what they bare.
One of the deuylles ansuerd & sayd, 'we bere the
kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long agoon he hath
wel deserued it. And Roulland, your trompette, wyth 4
Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is
brouzt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.' And as the
masse was fynysshed I² recounted to charles the vysyon
whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8
soule of Roulland in to paradys, & the deuylles bare
the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd
these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors,
cam hastely and said to charles how the crysten men 12
were dede & bytrayed, and how Rolland was hurté,
and in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he
had tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that
euery man shold retorne backe, & there was a grete 16
bryt. But temperour Charles, to whome thys mater
touched at the hert more than to any other, auanced
hym for to goo thyder; and whan he came he fonde
Rolland expyred, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20
al stretched. And anone Charles fyl down vpon hym,
and began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng hym on
his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body,
& myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24
torned to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte
of sorowe, he sayd in thys wyse: 'O comforte of my
body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere
that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28
broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng to Iudas³ macha-
beus in prowesse, samblant to sampson⁴ in strengthe, &
to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuw, fayr &
wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32
fendour of crysten men, walle of clergye, staffe to
wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Releuer of chyrches,

¹ orig. w hothey.

² m iij, back.

³ orig. Indas

⁴ m iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng, trewe in al
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloued
 4 of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in And he lamented
 over him as David
 over Absalom,
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with
 the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?
 8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty
 god that he conserue the; I requyre thangellys of heuen
 that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters,
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y^t they wyl receuye
 12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauid
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brougt the in com-
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
 20 and^s sorowed his neuw Roulland. And he made hys
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that
 nyght, & dyd doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes
 for to watche the body of Roulland; & after he dyd
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other and, after, caused
 his body to be
 embalmed.
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl
 sauour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete
 28 contemplacion."

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the
 noble Olyuer stretchēd oute in maner of a crosse, Next morning the
 body of Oliver is
 found,

¹ orig. thith.

² m iiii.

fastened to four
stakes,
and flayed.

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vnyles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth spere, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth stauces; he was al to-faished and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles ¹sware by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynymys were moche² ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; 12

Charles vows he
will never cease
till he has avenged
the death of his
men.

By a miracle the
day continues till
he overtakes the
Saracens, and

For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litle while there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seying 20 that he myght goo no ferther, returned to rounceyale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24

slays 4000 of
them.

Then Charles
enquires who was
the traitor.

Thierry accuses
Ganelon.

oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28

Charles appoints
a knight to fight
for Ganelon.

The kyng charles ordeyned a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyzt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, ³anone pynalle

Thierry slays him,

was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moeyen as 32 by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng any ferther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, & made to sytte

¹ m iiij, col. 2.

² orig. moche.

³ m iiij, back.

on them iiij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two
 horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the
 other ij horses, & made hym to be drawen with the one
 4 hors toward y^e eest, & that other toward the weste, that
 other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the
 north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his
 quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was
 8 bounden vnto.

and Charles
 has Ganelon
 drawn in pieces
 by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles
 gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &
 saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that
 12 he made in fraunce : capitulo vj

WHan thexecucion was doon of Ganellon and
 executed, charles & hys people cam in to the
 place where the frensshe men had be slayn, &
 16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordea, for to
 bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme
 vpon theyr horses ; Other salted them wyth salte, for
 to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye ;
 20 Other buryed them in the same place, & ¹some bare
 theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth
 oylle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse
 they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymytoyres
 24 or chircheyerdes, ryght deuoute & pryncypally halowed
 emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth
 vij bysshops. That one of the cymytoyres was in erles,
 and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of
 28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt
 Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt
 Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had
 sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were
 32 buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and
 destroyed in rounquuale. Themperour dyd do bere

The French army
 attend to their
 dead comrades :

some they bury,
 others they em-
 balm and take
 with them.

Two cemeteries
 are made, one at

Arles, the other
 at Bordeaux,

where the French
 dead are buried.

¹ m iiij, back, col. 2.

Roland is buried
at Blois, at the
Church of St.
Romain.

Oliver and others
are buried at
Bordeaux.

Charles gives all
the land for seven
miles round to the
church of St.
Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints
masses for the
dead.

At Arles are
buried Samson,
Naymes, and
others.

Constantine's
body is taken to
Rome.

rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerd
wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the
chyrche of saynt Romayn, the whyche he had edefyed
and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyd rychely 4
burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence; & on hye,
ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at
hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorye. Not
wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken aweye and 8
borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx
were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, ¹kyng¹ of Fryse, Ogyer,
kyng of denmark; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne;
Garyn, duc of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12
rus, kyng of bourdeaulx; Euglerius, kyng of guyan;
lambert, kyng¹ of bourges, and galerus reygnaut, with
v M other, charles gaf xij C vneces of siluer of money
that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16
many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of
their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboute he gaf
to the chyrche of saynt Romayn, and maad it subgette
to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes 20
and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably
to the sayd chyrche for charyte & loue of Rolland, and
ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their pas-
syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24
yere perpetuelly xxx poure men be fedde and clothed
competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that
there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that
were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28
was buryed the counte of lengres; samson, duc of bour-
goyne; Naymes, duc of bauyere; Arnold de bellandus,
and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth
ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32
uoste of ²Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other
Romayns, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules them-
perour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vneces of syluer

¹ m v.

² m v, col. 2.

and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete
somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where
4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed
to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Impery-
ally: capitulo vij

- 8 **A**fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles
and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by
vyenne; & there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche
holy man, abode, for he was wery and moche febled
of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne.
12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled
al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-
treye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to
gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vyc-
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara-
syns, paynymys, & myscreauntes. And after that he
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thappostle and saynt
20 Clement the pope had¹ doon in tyme passed, he maad
constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold
be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf
many rychesses to y^e chirche, & in token that fraunce
28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned
that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money
32 courant yerely & perpetuelly, & al they that shold gyue
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

Charles goes to
Vienna,

where he leaves
Turpin,

and thence to
Paris.

He ordains that
all kings of France
shall be crowned
at St. Denis,

and all bishops
should be subject
to the priest of
that church.

Also that every
person should pay
to it yearly four
pence,

¹ m v, back.

and any bondmen
who paid this
should be free.

He prays for the
souls of his
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-
pears to him,

and declares that
all who pay the
annual pence to
his church, shall
have forgiveness
of their sins.

And this payment
was called the
Frank of St.
Denis,

whence the coun-
try has its name
of France.

condycion, he wold they shold be franke & free of con-
dycyon. And after anone these thynges ordeyned, he
went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche
deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4
wold praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^t
were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had
regned that they myght be sauēd, and that the payne
that they had taken mygt be to them the crowne of mar- 8
tyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse
he prayed for al them that wold¹ paye gladly the pens
aforesayd to his chyrche. As god wold, that nyght
folowyng saynt denys appyered to hym, & sayd to 12
hym in thys manere: "O kyng, vnderstonde me,
knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker,
& he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst
the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespaces, 16
& that wyllingly shal paye the penyes for the edefy-
cacyon of my chyrche & augmentyng the seruyce of
god, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of
theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20
recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause
they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he
had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of
saynt denys, by cause that he was free and quyte of al 24
seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After
came the custome that that londe whyche was called
Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is
named at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28
free of al seruage anenst al peple; and therfore the
lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men
owen to be honoured & praysed.

¹ m v, back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:
capitulo viij

4 ¹ **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf
in vertuouse operacyons, And whan he felte the
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he
had tofore doon moche good, & enobled a chyrche of
8 our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and
gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precy-
sytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of
12 hys age lxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones
thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles,
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had
16 iij doughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had
ordeyned for specyall loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to
20 hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn,
archebyssshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, "I Tur-
24 pyn, archbyssshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the
chyrche tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the
psalm, '**Deus in adiutoryum**² **meum intende.**' I sawe
a companye of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,
beyng constrayned to ansuere, sayd, 'we alle goo to
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.' Thenne I sayd

Charles retires to
Acon;

where he dies at
the age of 72,

leaving three sons

and three daugh-
ters.

His youngest son,
Louie, succeeds
him.

Turpin, at Vienna,

sees a vision of
devils,

who tell him of
the death of
Charles, and that
they mean to have
his soul.

¹ m vj. ² orig. adiutoryum. ³ m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of
our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng', after that
ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.' Anone after,
The devils return, or he coude fynyshe hys psalme, the deuylles cam 4
retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.
"And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-
fore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?'
and tell him that St. James pro-
duced so many
good works done
by Charles, that that same deuyl ansuerd, that 'James of galyce, frende 8
to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan
we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally
departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so
many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12
make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-
mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght
haue noo thyng ne parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyl
they cannot have
his soule. 'vanysshed awaye," & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16
Charles, in the moneth of feuaryere, rendred his soule
to god holyly. For after that he returned fro spayn he
dyd but languyshe & appayre in hys body toward hys
deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20
to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that
the glorious archebyssshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfy-
cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth
chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24
paracyon of hys eyge in heuen. His sepulture was
moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world,
noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myzt
not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 28
arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, com-
prysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,
accompanied wyth prynces Romainys, archebyssshops,
byssshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32
lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the
body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a
fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

Charles is buried
with great mag-
nificence,
in a tomb ouer
which was set a
figure of himself,
crowned and
seated on his
throne.

a chayer of gold moche fayre and shynyng', and resembled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in
 4 fayre letters ¹of gold, & wyth the ryzt hande he helde the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed shold not enclyne to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne
 8 of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys heed raught to the arche, whiche was al aboute wel made, & the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and after
 12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees
were placed the
Gospels,

and in his left
hande the sceptre.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**His werke, accomplyshed to the playsyr of god tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue comprysed in the separacyon and deuydyng of the
 20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce, and of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moien of his wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng Pepyn, fader of
 24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn the lygnage of ²kyng Cloys took an ende in successyon of the Royalme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrst book
 28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourryssed, of hys corpulence, of hys etyng, of hys strengthe, of hys science, & other werkes of magnyfycence. The second book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst
 32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant, Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kynge; & al the fyrst parte of the second book is attributed to noble olyuer,

This work contains three books, divided into chapters.

The first book tells of the beginning of France,

and of the youth of Charles.

The second book, of the duel between Oliver and Fierabras.

¹ m vj, back, col. 2.

² m vij.

The third book
treats of the con-
quest of Spain by
Charles,

of the treason of
Ganellon,

and the death of
Charles.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how
the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and
put in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the
curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4
relyques recoured, and other maters of grete mer-
uaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of
saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne &
galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8
constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon
by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson
of Ganellon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was
pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12
peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably
the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and
wryton. and ¹after that ony persone wyl here or rede
of thys matere, the table made atte begynnnyng shal 16
shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or
rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

This work I have
written to be a
good example to
all,
how to rule their
lives.

AS I haue sayd at the begynnnyng of thys present 20
werke, the escriptures and feates somme haue
ben reduced in wrytyng^r for to be in memorye,
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs
ensaumple in ensyewyng^r and folowyng them, & they 24
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-
standyng^r is more contente to reteyne parables and
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstandyng^r,
and also semblably thystoryes spekyng^r of our lord
Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, & of his vertuous sub-
gettes, euery man ouzt gladly to here and reteinne them. 32
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

And I have made
it at the request

¹ m vij, col. 2.

- man to fore named, Maister henry bolonnyer, chanonne
of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate & reduyse
in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as
4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd ¹book I haue
taken & drawen oute of a book named myrroure hys-
toryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue
onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.
8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book,
I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout
fayllyng, by ordynauce of chapytres & partyes of the
sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.
12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken
otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good
vnderstandyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde
correxyon and amendement, and of the defaultes par-
16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert
thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my
wytte & vnderstandyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not
vtte ne wryte thys matere withoute errour. Neuer-
20 theles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel
compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde
nothyng but moeyn for to come to saluacyon. To the
whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly
24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

of Master Bolo-
myer,
Canon of Lau-
sanne.

The first and third
book I haue trans-
lated from the
*Speculum His-
toriale*, and the
second from an
old French
romance.

I pray all who
may find a fault
in it to pardon it,

and attribute to
my want of learn-
ing, not my good
will.

- ¶ And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred
& requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn,
Maister wylliam dau²beny, one of the tresorers of the
28 Jewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our na-
turel and souerayn lord, late of noble memorye, kyng
Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy,
To reduce al these sayd hystories in to our Englysshe
32 tongue, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd
book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn,
prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to

And I, William
Caxton, haue, at

the instance of
Sir W. Daubeney,

translated this
book into English

And I pray all to

¹ m vij, back.

² m vij, back, col. 2.

excuse my rude
translation, and
forgive the faults
they may find.

And this work I
finished on the
18th June, in the
year of our Lord,
1488.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and
reducyng, bysechyng theym that shal fynde faute to
correcte it, & in so doying they shal deserue thankynge,
& I shal praye god for them, who brynge them and me, 4
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed in
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xviiij day of
Iuyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, 8
And the yere of our lord MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord, & the
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth.

¶ Explicit per William Caxton.

NOTES.

- Page 1, line 12. "hye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.
- p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *lentendement comun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est submis*.
- p. 1, l. 15. "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers*.
- p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.
- p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.
- p. 2, l. 27. The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kynge Arthur and of certeyn of his knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and emprynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.
- p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieux, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.
- p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary*.
- p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*
- p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.
- p. 19, l. 27. [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sege off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.
- p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly:" Fr. *aucentyquement*.
- p. 19, l. 32. "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.
- p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion*.
- p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye:" Fr. *pais*.
- p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte:" Fr. *bien a point*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *on fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "be enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. *soies enclos en iustee*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ils se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. *depuis sont vus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constantynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir veoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste:" add. Fr. *adioudre*. On the word adjust, as representing the two Latin forms *adjustare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I haue not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babyloyn* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdone* will be found in Dr. Hausknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euyl and olde:" Fr. *comme mauvais viella-t*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdone of Babyloyn*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur:" in the original the same.

- p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys houre, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous ottroie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. "he setted nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "*Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui vaillet*."
- p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. "of the rounde table." An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" *barils*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and *Introd.*, p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."
- p. 57, l. 21. "Termagaunt:" Fr. *Talugaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. "goddess:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieulx*.
- p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.
- p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. "grabain." The names of *Ferumbras'* swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been *Plorance*, *Baptism*, and *Garbain*.
- p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. "bended:" bound, banded: Fr. *bende*.
- p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" i. e. seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu tauises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. "vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. "bowed and entrede:" Fr. *ploiez et entres*.
- p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonne:" Fr. *tronconne*, i. e. broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant peece*, i. e. for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. þ^e Swerde & y^e bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleieð mid sweordes*." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *resioyr*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. "beyng^t nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xiiij."
- p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "terrestre."
- p. 71, l. 21. "Longyus." On the *legend of Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. "for hys glorious medytacyon." In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. "Neuertheles:" Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. "soo coueytous in smytyng:" Fr. *conuoiteuls et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" i. e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vtteraunce:" a *oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.
 p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *le faire vne pache*.
 p. 74, l. 5. "vylete:" Fr. *ville*.
 p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.
 p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl:" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.
 p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au pres le poins de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is *Ferumbras*.
 p. 78, l. 16. "enforced:" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—
 "pan Firumbras *enforcede* hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
 p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—

"*falsarz an feberd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

- p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. *crapaulx*, a toad.
 p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinum fructus eius* A.)." *Apple* was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.
 p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de traiz*."
 p. 81, l. 28. "faus dartes." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
 p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete:" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre*.
 p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before *makyng* makes the sentence rather awkward.
 p. 82, l. 27. "Amanodys:" Fr. *Amandis*.
 p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
 p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984:
 "at aualyng of an hulle."
 p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
 p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.
 p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.
 p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.

"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuwe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght:" Fr. *damoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yeman:" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brullant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soumis a faulx fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make": Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrre:" Fr. *faicte dune fae*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke:" Fr. *cult enuis les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyslioneste:" Fr. *inhonnestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" i. e. on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayns:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute:" i. e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she
 "a rope to hem lete down gooñ
 That aboveñ was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i. e. an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde va." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*

- daventure quelque*, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.
- p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doute:" Fr. *en aultre doute*, i. e. fear.
- p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.
- p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar:" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.
- p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. *dommaige*.
- p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.
- p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned:" Fr. *detenu*.
- p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.
- p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.
- p. 99, l. 7. "lese:" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.
- p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.
- p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.
- p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.
- p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantribe, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."
- p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."
- p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland: the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.
- p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:
- "He sittes his duspers Imange,
With white berde large and lange
Faire of flesche & felle.
With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kynge þat es so strange,
His doghety men imelle."
- p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed:" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.
- p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.
- p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:"
Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite muser en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. *na plus cure de ioeur.*
- p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. *trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. "Marpyn:" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Maubyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be:" Fr. *son espouz advenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. "doubted:" feared. Fr. *redoubte.*
- p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*
- p. 130, l. 29. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c.:" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. *si hardis et des-mesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. "hir loue and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete facyon:" Fr. *moreau de grant fasson.*
- p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recouure.*
- p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pleust de la venir baisier, en disant que selle viuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere ladmiral seroit vne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. "at vtteraunce:" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. *ne vous esmaies eneore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. *beuuraige*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. *car ils veoient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*

- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the *Sowdone* Balan smashes Mahound.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. *les francoys nous veulent faire refradier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynymys must retorne:" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volunteered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *ung iour entre les aultres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aduenture*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. *lattaing du trauers du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant ladmiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngtras; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautefeuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned:" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a thief attaynt:" Fr. *comme larron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreaunte, &c.:" Fr. *reclame recreant et tenu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le menton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurcy*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confanon:" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui avoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon:" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doynge:" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbras*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdowe*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdowe*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. *il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused:" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "*Abuser*. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. *S'abuser*. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng Coldroe tempestede hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de mommiere: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed:" Fr. *quil soit desensle(?)*.
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the *Sowdowe* Floripas first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyng:" Fr. *par presumption* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que faire*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. *grant abusion*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.:" Fr. *quil ny avoit point dabusion en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al rauysshed:" Fr. *tout rauy*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "ouerthrew to the erthe:" Fr. *vont tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releued many and dyuers chyrches:" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not leue herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se voulst tenir a cecy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. *fit aucunes experimentacions*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *eulx qui estoient presens et leurs successeurs fussent francs et liberez, les taillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent condicionez*.

- p. 215, l. 35. "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de escoc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. "demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. "surprised:" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. "dystourned:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourba*.
- p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.
- p. 242, l. 6. "to-faished and broken:" Fr. *il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. "daubeny." See *Introduction*, p. 7.



G L O S S A R Y.

- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.
 Abuse, *v.* 206/19, deceive.
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.
 Accompysshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
 Acoward, *v.* 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
 Adioust, *v.* 39/9, to add, append.
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.
 Affectuonsly, *adv.* 13/12, affectionately, with affection.
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49/20, praised.
 Ampull, *s.* 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
 And, *conj.* 101/15, if.
 Anenst, *prep.* 246/29, towards, as regards.
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76/28, reached to, touched.
 Arbalastre, *s.* 104/12, a cross-bow.
 Aresonned, *pa. par.* 52/20, questioned.
 Attayned, *pt. s.* 190/19, reached, struck.
 Attones, *adv.* 56/14, at once, at the same time.
 Aualed, *pt. s.* 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/34, let down, lowered.
 Bacynet, *s.* 32/15, a small helmet.
- Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.
 Baston, *s.* 182/4, a staff.
 Batayl, *s.* 232/35, a battalion, a division of an army.
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89/20, bathed, plunged.
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95/20, baths.
 Becke, *s.* 20/30, a beak, bill.
 Behoeful, *v.* 145/25, advisable, advantageous.
 Belfraye, *s.* 175/7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82/1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeyld.
 Bowedraugt, *s.* 189/31, a bowshot.
 Boystous, *a.* 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101/35, spurred.
 Buscage, *s.* 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.
- Camuse, *a.* 94/27, short, thick-nosed.
 Chauffed, *pa. par.* 95/20, warmed, heated.
 Complyces, *s. pl.* 164/33, accomplices.
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24/34, confiscated.
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19/32, suitably, fittingly.
 Corobere, *v.* 24/9, to strengthen.
 Crapauld, *s.* 79/20, a toad.

Creneur, *s.* 46/19, dread.
 "Creneur, feare, dread." —
 Cotgrave.

Cresme, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or
 holy oil with which kings were
 anointed at their consecration.
 See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. Creme.

Dedyed, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.

Delyuer, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble.
 Hence the modern *clever*.

Depesshe, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten,
 hurry.

Derked, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.

Descerkled, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the
 circle or ring round the helmet.

Descouerd, *pa. par.* 75/26, un-
 covered, deprived.

Desmaylled, *pa. par.* 69/10, de-
 prived of the mails or plates.

Disreng, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown
 in disorder.

Dyshoneste, *s.* 91/31, filth, nasti-
 ness.

Dyssymyle, *pa. par.* 13/22, dis-
 guised.

Dysturned, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned
 aside.

Dystrouble, *v.* 151/27, trouble, dis-
 turb, interfere with.

Egal, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.

Empessed, *pa. par.* 219/14, hin-
 dered, obstructed.

Enforced, *pt. s.* 78/16, exerted.

Engyne, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.

Enhardyed, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encour-
 aged, took courage.

Ensyeuyng, *v.* 250/24, following.

Enterbraced, *pt. pl.* 113/25, em-
 braced.

Enterprenour, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser,
 actor.

Entretene, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave
 towards.

Entyer, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.

Entyered, *pa. par.* 244/27, interred.

Entyerly, *adv.* 149/28, earnestly,
 very greatly. "Entyryly: in-
 time." — *Cathol. Anglicum*.

Escrye, *v.* 77/27, to call upon,
 invoke.

Faus, *a.* 79/18. See note.

Faysyble, *a.* 49/34, possible to be
 done, feasible.

Felounye, *s.* 109/30, daring, reck-
 lessness.

Fere, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.

Ferfully, *adv.* 193/32, in fear,
 timidly.

Fette, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.

Fliese, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.

Florysshe, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.

Florysshed, *pa. par.* 108/23, flow-
 ing, long and wide.

Formosyte, *s.* 198/10, beauty.

Frequented, *pt. s.* 29/12, made
 frequent use of.

Geayler, *s.* 89/1, jailer.

Glaues, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives:
 weapons made of a cutting blade
 fixed at the end of a staff.

Gree, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.

Greued, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, in-
 jured.

Guarysshed, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured,
 healed.

Habylle, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.

Harnoys, *s.* 105/34, equipments,
 outfit.

Houyng, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.

Iape, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.

Ionques, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See
Cath. Anglicum, *s.* v. Ionkett.

Journeye, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.

Lawhe, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.

Lawhyng, *a.* 90/15, laughing.

Lesynges, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.

Leteth, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes.
Leteth the wete = tells you, sends
 notice to you.

Lette, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed,
 hindered.

- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
- Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
- Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
- Lyces, *s. pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
- Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
- Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
- Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.
- Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
- Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
- Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
- Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
- Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
- Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
- Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
- Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
- Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.
"Ouer alle; *passim, vbicunque, genus loquendi est vbique*."—*Cath. Anglicum*.
- Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.
- Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.
- Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.
- Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
- Pried, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
- Purchaced, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
- Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
- Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
- Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
- Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
- Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
- Releued, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
- Remysed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
- Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.
- Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
- Rescowed, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
- Retcheth, 3 *pr. s.* 22/3, cares, recks.
- Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
- Salewed, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
- Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.
- Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.
- Sommyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
- Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
- Sperhawke, *s.* 193/32, a sparrow-hawk.
- Stratchedden, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
- Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
- Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
- Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y^e See.
- Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.
- Syeges, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
- Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.
- Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
- Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
- To-frusshed, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
- Trauyllled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
- Tronchonneed, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
- Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

Tyerce, *s.* 232/23, terce, or the third
of the canonical hours.

Underset, *pa. par.* 249/7, propped
up, supported.

Vnnethe, *adv.* 31/6, scarcely, with
difficulty.

Vylaynsly, *adv.* 222/17, shamefully,
disgracefully.

Wende, *pt. s.* 36/13, thought, in-
tended.

Wesshe, *pt. s.* 66/21, washed.

Wynbrowes, *s. pl.* 26/33, eyebrows.
Evidently a corruption of *eyen-
browes*.

Ymbre, *s.* 37/35, ember.

Early English Text Society.

The subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year (and 6s. for foreign papers). £5 10s. (and 10s. additional for the Library Catalogue). One shilling is added to the £1 in 1884, and should be paid either to the Society's Secretary at the General Office of the Union Bank, Piccadilly Street, London, W.C., or by Cheque or Money Order (which is available at the Chief Office, London) to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DAVIES, Esq., 10, Tavistock Square, London, W.C., or to any of the following:—London, E., and Agents "Union Bank," 1, Corporation Court, London, E.C. 4. A year's notice for the original series will be a year for the Extra Series. The Society's Books are also sold separately at the gross price when there is the least.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1881 are:

75. *Sanctus Anglicanus*, an early English homily, 1534, and *Prayers*, 1535, 1540, 1545, 1550, 1555, 1560, 1565, 1570, 1575, 1580, 1585, 1590, 1595, 1600, 1605, 1610, 1615, 1620, 1625, 1630, 1635, 1640, 1645, 1650, 1655, 1660, 1665, 1670, 1675, 1680, 1685, 1690, 1695, 1700, 1705, 1710, 1715, 1720, 1725, 1730, 1735, 1740, 1745, 1750, 1755, 1760, 1765, 1770, 1775, 1780, 1785, 1790, 1795, 1800, 1805, 1810, 1815, 1820, 1825, 1830, 1835, 1840, 1845, 1850, 1855, 1860, 1865, 1870, 1875, 1880, 1885, 1890, 1895, 1900, 1905, 1910, 1915, 1920, 1925, 1930, 1935, 1940, 1945, 1950, 1955, 1960, 1965, 1970, 1975, 1980, 1985, 1990, 1995, 2000, 2005, 2010, 2015, 2020, 2025, 2030, 2035, 2040, 2045, 2050, 2055, 2060, 2065, 2070, 2075, 2080, 2085, 2090, 2095, 2100, 2105, 2110, 2115, 2120, 2125, 2130, 2135, 2140, 2145, 2150, 2155, 2160, 2165, 2170, 2175, 2180, 2185, 2190, 2195, 2200, 2205, 2210, 2215, 2220, 2225, 2230, 2235, 2240, 2245, 2250, 2255, 2260, 2265, 2270, 2275, 2280, 2285, 2290, 2295, 2300, 2305, 2310, 2315, 2320, 2325, 2330, 2335, 2340, 2345, 2350, 2355, 2360, 2365, 2370, 2375, 2380, 2385, 2390, 2395, 2400, 2405, 2410, 2415, 2420, 2425, 2430, 2435, 2440, 2445, 2450, 2455, 2460, 2465, 2470, 2475, 2480, 2485, 2490, 2495, 2500, 2505, 2510, 2515, 2520, 2525, 2530, 2535, 2540, 2545, 2550, 2555, 2560, 2565, 2570, 2575, 2580, 2585, 2590, 2595, 2600, 2605, 2610, 2615, 2620, 2625, 2630, 2635, 2640, 2645, 2650, 2655, 2660, 2665, 2670, 2675, 2680, 2685, 2690, 2695, 2700, 2705, 2710, 2715, 2720, 2725, 2730, 2735, 2740, 2745, 2750, 2755, 2760, 2765, 2770, 2775, 2780, 2785, 2790, 2795, 2800, 2805, 2810, 2815, 2820, 2825, 2830, 2835, 2840, 2845, 2850, 2855, 2860, 2865, 2870, 2875, 2880, 2885, 2890, 2895, 2900, 2905, 2910, 2915, 2920, 2925, 2930, 2935, 2940, 2945, 2950, 2955, 2960, 2965, 2970, 2975, 2980, 2985, 2990, 2995, 3000, 3005, 3010, 3015, 3020, 3025, 3030, 3035, 3040, 3045, 3050, 3055, 3060, 3065, 3070, 3075, 3080, 3085, 3090, 3095, 3100, 3105, 3110, 3115, 3120, 3125, 3130, 3135, 3140, 3145, 3150, 3155, 3160, 3165, 3170, 3175, 3180, 3185, 3190, 3195, 3200, 3205, 3210, 3215, 3220, 3225, 3230, 3235, 3240, 3245, 3250, 3255, 3260, 3265, 3270, 3275, 3280, 3285, 3290, 3295, 3300, 3305, 3310, 3315, 3320, 3325, 3330, 3335, 3340, 3345, 3350, 3355, 3360, 3365, 3370, 3375, 3380, 3385, 3390, 3395, 3400, 3405, 3410, 3415, 3420, 3425, 3430, 3435, 3440, 3445, 3450, 3455, 3460, 3465, 3470, 3475, 3480, 3485, 3490, 3495, 3500, 3505, 3510, 3515, 3520, 3525, 3530, 3535, 3540, 3545, 3550, 3555, 3560, 3565, 3570, 3575, 3580, 3585, 3590, 3595, 3600, 3605, 3610, 3615, 3620, 3625, 3630, 3635, 3640, 3645, 3650, 3655, 3660, 3665, 3670, 3675, 3680, 3685, 3690, 3695, 3700, 3705, 3710, 3715, 3720, 3725, 3730, 3735, 3740, 3745, 3750, 3755, 3760, 3765, 3770, 3775, 3780, 3785, 3790, 3795, 3800, 3805, 3810, 3815, 3820, 3825, 3830, 3835, 3840, 3845, 3850, 3855, 3860, 3865, 3870, 3875, 3880, 3885, 3890, 3895, 3900, 3905, 3910, 3915, 3920, 3925, 3930, 3935, 3940, 3945, 3950, 3955, 3960, 3965, 3970, 3975, 3980, 3985, 3990, 3995, 4000, 4005, 4010, 4015, 4020, 4025, 4030, 4035, 4040, 4045, 4050, 4055, 4060, 4065, 4070, 4075, 4080, 4085, 4090, 4095, 4100, 4105, 4110, 4115, 4120, 4125, 4130, 4135, 4140, 4145, 4150, 4155, 4160, 4165, 4170, 4175, 4180, 4185, 4190, 4195, 4200, 4205, 4210, 4215, 4220, 4225, 4230, 4235, 4240, 4245, 4250, 4255, 4260, 4265, 4270, 4275, 4280, 4285, 4290, 4295, 4300, 4305, 4310, 4315, 4320, 4325, 4330, 4335, 4340, 4345, 4350, 4355, 4360, 4365, 4370, 4375, 4380, 4385, 4390, 4395, 4400, 4405, 4410, 4415, 4420, 4425, 4430, 4435, 4440, 4445, 4450, 4455, 4460, 4465, 4470, 4475, 4480, 4485, 4490, 4495, 4500, 4505, 4510, 4515, 4520, 4525, 4530, 4535, 4540, 4545, 4550, 4555, 4560, 4565, 4570, 4575, 4580, 4585, 4590, 4595, 4600, 4605, 4610, 4615, 4620, 4625, 4630, 4635, 4640, 4645, 4650, 4655, 4660, 4665, 4670, 4675, 4680, 4685, 4690, 4695, 4700, 4705, 4710, 4715, 4720, 4725, 4730, 4735, 4740, 4745, 4750, 4755, 4760, 4765, 4770, 4775, 4780, 4785, 4790, 4795, 4800, 4805, 4810, 4815, 4820, 4825, 4830, 4835, 4840, 4845, 4850, 4855, 4860, 4865, 4870, 4875, 4880, 4885, 4890, 4895, 4900, 4905, 4910, 4915, 4920, 4925, 4930, 4935, 4940, 4945, 4950, 4955, 4960, 4965, 4970, 4975, 4980, 4985, 4990, 4995, 5000, 5005, 5010, 5015, 5020, 5025, 5030, 5035, 5040, 5045, 5050, 5055, 5060, 5065, 5070, 5075, 5080, 5085, 5090, 5095, 5100, 5105, 5110, 5115, 5120, 5125, 5130, 5135, 5140, 5145, 5150, 5155, 5160, 5165, 5170, 5175, 5180, 5185, 5190, 5195, 5200, 5205, 5210, 5215, 5220, 5225, 5230, 5235, 5240, 5245, 5250, 5255, 5260, 5265, 5270, 5275, 5280, 5285, 5290, 5295, 5300, 5305, 5310, 5315, 5320, 5325, 5330, 5335, 5340, 5345, 5350, 5355, 5360, 5365, 5370, 5375, 5380, 5385, 5390, 5395, 5400, 5405, 5410, 5415, 5420, 5425, 5430, 5435, 5440, 5445, 5450, 5455, 5460, 5465, 5470, 5475, 5480, 5485, 5490, 5495, 5500, 5505, 5510, 5515, 5520, 5525, 5530, 5535, 5540, 5545, 5550, 5555, 5560, 5565, 5570, 5575, 5580, 5585, 5590, 5595, 5600, 5605, 5610, 5615, 5620, 5625, 5630, 5635, 5640, 5645, 5650, 5655, 5660, 5665, 5670, 5675, 5680, 5685, 5690, 5695, 5700, 5705, 5710, 5715, 5720, 5725, 5730, 5735, 5740, 5745, 5750, 5755, 5760, 5765, 5770, 5775, 5780, 5785, 5790, 5795, 5800, 5805, 5810, 5815, 5820, 5825, 5830, 5835, 5840, 5845, 5850, 5855, 5860, 5865, 5870, 5875, 5880, 5885, 5890, 5895, 5900, 5905, 5910, 5915, 5920, 5925, 5930, 5935, 5940, 5945, 5950, 5955, 5960, 5965, 5970, 5975, 5980, 5985, 5990, 5995, 6000, 6005, 6010, 6015, 6020, 6025, 6030, 6035, 6040, 6045, 6050, 6055, 6060, 6065, 6070, 6075, 6080, 6085, 6090, 6095, 6100, 6105, 6110, 6115, 6120, 6125, 6130, 6135, 6140, 6145, 6150, 6155, 6160, 6165, 6170, 6175, 6180, 6185, 6190, 6195, 6200, 6205, 6210, 6215, 6220, 6225, 6230, 6235, 6240, 6245, 6250, 6255, 6260, 6265, 6270, 6275, 6280, 6285, 6290, 6295, 6300, 6305, 6310, 6315, 6320, 6325, 6330, 6335, 6340, 6345, 6350, 6355, 6360, 6365, 6370, 6375, 6380, 6385, 6390, 6395, 6400, 6405, 6410, 6415, 6420, 6425, 6430, 6435, 6440, 6445, 6450, 6455, 6460, 6465, 6470, 6475, 6480, 6485, 6490, 6495, 6500, 6505, 6510, 6515, 6520, 6525, 6530, 6535, 6540, 6545, 6550, 6555, 6560, 6565, 6570, 6575, 6580, 6585, 6590, 6595, 6600, 6605, 6610, 6615, 6620, 6625, 6630, 6635, 6640, 6645, 6650, 6655, 6660, 6665, 6670, 6675, 6680, 6685, 6690, 6695, 6700, 6705, 6710, 6715, 6720, 6725, 6730, 6735, 6740, 6745, 6750, 6755, 6760, 6765, 6770, 6775, 6780, 6785, 6790, 6795, 6800, 6805, 6810, 6815, 6820, 6825, 6830, 6835, 6840, 6845, 6850, 6855, 6860, 6865, 6870, 6875, 6880, 6885, 6890, 6895, 6900, 6905, 6910, 6915, 6920, 6925, 6930, 6935, 6940, 6945, 6950, 6955, 6960, 6965, 6970, 6975, 6980, 6985, 6990, 6995, 7000, 7005, 7010, 7015, 7020, 7025, 7030, 7035, 7040, 7045, 7050, 7055, 7060, 7065, 7070, 7075, 7080, 7085, 7090, 7095, 7100, 7105, 7110, 7115, 7120, 7125, 7130, 7135, 7140, 7145, 7150, 7155, 7160, 7165, 7170, 7175, 7180, 7185, 7190, 7195, 7200, 7205, 7210, 7215, 7220, 7225, 7230, 7235, 7240, 7245, 7250, 7255, 7260, 7265, 7270, 7275, 7280, 7285, 7290, 7295, 7300, 7305, 7310, 7315, 7320, 7325, 7330, 7335, 7340, 7345, 7350, 7355, 7360, 7365, 7370, 7375, 7380, 7385, 7390, 7395, 7400, 7405, 7410, 7415, 7420, 7425, 7430, 7435, 7440, 7445, 7450, 7455, 7460, 7465, 7470, 7475, 7480, 7485, 7490, 7495, 7500, 7505, 7510, 7515, 7520, 7525, 7530, 7535, 7540, 7545, 7550, 7555, 7560, 7565, 7570, 7575, 7580, 7585, 7590, 7595, 7600, 7605, 7610, 7615, 7620, 7625, 7630, 7635, 7640, 7645, 7650, 7655, 7660, 7665, 7670, 7675, 7680, 7685, 7690, 7695, 7700, 7705, 7710, 7715, 7720, 7725, 7730, 7735, 7740, 7745, 7750, 7755, 7760, 7765, 7770, 7775, 7780, 7785, 7790, 7795, 7800, 7805, 7810, 7815, 7820, 7825, 7830, 7835, 7840, 7845, 7850, 7855, 7860, 7865, 7870, 7875, 7880, 7885, 7890, 7895, 7900, 7905, 7910, 7915, 7920, 7925, 7930, 7935, 7940, 7945, 7950, 7955, 7960, 7965, 7970, 7975, 7980, 7985, 7990, 7995, 8000, 8005, 8010, 8015, 8020, 8025, 8030, 8035, 8040, 8045, 8050, 8055, 8060, 8065, 8070, 8075, 8080, 8085, 8090, 8095, 8100, 8105, 8110, 8115, 8120, 8125, 8130, 8135, 8140, 8145, 8150, 8155, 8160, 8165, 8170, 8175, 8180, 8185, 8190, 8195, 8200, 8205, 8210, 8215, 8220, 8225, 8230, 8235, 8240, 8245, 8250, 8255, 8260, 8265, 8270, 8275, 8280, 8285, 8290, 8295, 8300, 8305, 8310, 8315, 8320, 8325, 8330, 8335, 8340, 8345, 8350, 8355, 8360, 8365, 8370, 8375, 8380, 8385, 8390, 8395, 8400, 8405, 8410, 8415, 8420, 8425, 8430, 8435, 8440, 8445, 8450, 8455, 8460, 8465, 8470, 8475, 8480, 8485, 8490, 8495, 8500, 8505, 8510, 8515, 8520, 8525, 8530, 8535, 8540, 8545, 8550, 8555, 8560, 8565, 8570, 8575, 8580, 8585, 8590, 8595, 8600, 8605, 8610, 8615, 8620, 8625, 8630, 8635, 8640, 8645, 8650, 8655, 8660, 8665, 8670, 8675, 8680, 8685, 8690, 8695, 8700, 8705, 8710, 8715, 8720, 8725, 8730, 8735, 8740, 8745, 8750, 8755, 8760, 8765, 8770, 8775, 8780, 8785, 8790, 8795, 8800, 8805, 8810, 8815, 8820, 8825, 8830, 8835, 8840, 8845, 8850, 8855, 8860, 8865, 8870, 8875, 8880, 8885, 8890, 8895, 8900, 8905, 8910, 8915, 8920, 8925, 8930, 8935, 8940, 8945, 8950, 8955, 8960, 8965, 8970, 8975, 8980, 8985, 8990, 8995, 9000, 9005, 9010, 9015, 9020, 9025, 9030, 9035, 9040, 9045, 9050, 9055, 9060, 9065, 9070, 9075, 9080, 9085, 9090, 9095, 9100, 9105, 9110, 9115, 9120, 9125, 9130, 9135, 9140, 9145, 9150, 9155, 9160, 9165, 9170, 9175, 9180, 9185, 9190, 9195, 9200, 9205, 9210, 9215, 9220, 9225, 9230, 9235, 9240, 9245, 9250, 9255, 9260, 9265, 9270, 9275, 9280, 9285, 9290, 9295, 9300, 9305, 9310, 9315, 9320, 9325, 9330, 9335, 9340, 9345, 9350, 9355, 9360, 9365, 9370, 9375, 9380, 9385, 9390, 9395, 9400, 9405, 9410, 9415, 9420, 9425, 9430, 9435, 9440, 9445, 9450, 9455, 9460, 9465, 9470, 9475, 9480, 9485, 9490, 9495, 9500, 9505, 9510, 9515, 9520, 9525, 9530, 9535, 9540, 9545, 9550, 9555, 9560, 9565, 9570, 9575, 9580, 9585, 9590, 9595, 9600, 9605, 9610, 9615, 9620, 9625, 9630, 9635, 9640, 9645, 9650, 9655, 9660, 9665, 9670, 9675, 9680, 9685, 9690, 9695, 9700, 9705, 9710, 9715, 9720, 9725, 9730, 9735, 9740, 9745, 9750, 9755, 9760, 9765, 9770, 9775, 9780, 9785, 9790, 9795, 9800, 9805, 9810, 9815, 9820, 9825, 9830, 9835, 9840, 9845, 9850, 9855, 9860, 9865, 9870, 9875, 9880, 9885, 9890, 9895, 9900, 9905, 9910, 9915, 9920, 9925, 9930, 9935, 9940, 9945, 9950, 9955, 9960, 9965, 9970, 9975, 9980, 9985, 9990, 9995, 10000, 10005, 10010, 10015, 10020, 10025, 10030, 10035, 10040, 10045, 10050, 10055, 10060, 10065, 10070, 10075, 10080, 10085, 10090, 10095, 10100, 10105, 10110, 10115, 10120, 10125, 10130, 10135, 10140, 10145, 10150, 10155, 10160, 10165, 10170, 10175, 10180, 10185, 10190, 10195, 10200, 10205, 10210, 10215, 10220, 10225, 10230, 10235, 10240, 10245, 10250, 10255, 10260, 10265, 10270, 10275, 10280, 10285, 10290, 10295, 10300, 10305, 10310, 10315, 10320, 10325, 10330, 10335, 10340, 10345, 10350, 10355, 10360, 10365, 10370, 10375, 10380, 10385, 10390, 10395, 10400, 10405, 10410, 10415, 10420, 10425, 10430, 10435, 10440, 10445, 10450, 10455, 10460, 10465, 10470, 10475, 10480, 10485, 10490, 10495, 10500, 10505, 10510, 10515, 10520, 10525, 10530, 10535, 10540, 10545, 10550, 10555, 10560, 10565, 10570, 10575, 10580, 10585, 10590, 10595, 10600, 10605, 10610, 10615, 10620, 10625, 10630, 10635, 10640, 10645, 10650, 10655, 10660, 10665, 10670, 10675, 10680, 10685, 10690, 10695, 10700, 10705, 10710, 10715, 10720, 10725, 10730, 10735, 10740, 10745, 10750, 10755, 10760, 10765, 10770, 10775, 10780, 10785, 10790, 10795, 10800, 10805, 10810, 10815, 10820, 10825, 10830, 10835, 10840, 10845, 10850, 10855, 10860, 10865, 10870, 10875, 10880, 10885, 10890, 10895, 10900, 10905, 10910, 10915, 10920, 10925, 10930, 10935, 10940, 10945, 10950, 10955, 10960, 10965, 10970, 10975, 10980, 10985, 10990, 10995, 11000, 11005, 11010, 11015, 11020, 11025, 11030, 11035, 11040, 11045, 11050, 11055, 11060, 11065, 11070, 11075, 11080, 11085, 11090, 11095, 11100, 11105, 11110, 11115, 11120, 11125, 11130, 11135, 11140, 11145, 11150, 11155, 11160, 11165, 11170, 11175, 11180, 11185, 11190, 11195, 11200, 11205, 11210, 11215, 11220, 11225, 11230, 11235, 11240, 11245, 11250, 11255, 11260, 11265, 11270, 112

